A Dissertation<br>by<br>CHANGNINGPHAABI NAMOIJAM

Submitted to the Office of Graduate and Professional Studies of Texas A\&M University in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree of DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

Chair of Committee, Matthew A. Papanikolas
Committee Members, Riad Masri
Huiyan Sang
Matthew P. Young
Head of Department, Sarah Witherspoon

August 2020

Major Subject: Mathematics

Copyright 2020 Changningphaabi Namoijam


#### Abstract

In this dissertation, we study algebraic relations among periods, quasi-periods, logarithms and quasi-logarithms of Drinfeld modules. This work is motivated by the Tannakian theory for $t$ motives especially the function field analogue, proved by Papanikolas, of Grothendieck's conjecture for periods of abelian varieties. Papanikolas' theorem shows that the dimension of the Galois group associated to a $t$-motive is equal to the transcendence degree of the entries of the period matrix of the $t$-motive. In recent work, Papanikolas and the author proved that the period matrix of the prolongation $t$-motives, introduced by Maurischat, of $t$-motives associated to $t$-modules entail hyperderivatives of periods and quasi-periods. Computing the Galois group of these prolongations, we prove that the algebraic relations among the hyperderivatives of periods and quasi-periods of a Drinfeld module are the ones induced by the endomorphisms of the Drinfeld module. Furthermore, we construct a new $t$-motive using these prolongations and compute its Galois group, using which we investigate hyperderivatives of Drinfeld logarithms and quasi-logarithms, and prove transcendence results about them.


## DEDICATION

This dissertation is dedicated to my parents and my brother.

## ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I would like to thank my doctoral adviser, Matthew Papanikolas, for his guidance, encouragement and patience throughout my graduate studies. His invaluable advice and reassurances have been influential in the completion of this dissertation.

## CONTRIBUTORS AND FUNDING SOURCES

## Contributors

This work was supported by a dissertation committee consisting of Professor Matthew A. Papanikolas, Professor Riad Masri and Professor Matthew P. Young of the Department of Mathematics and Professor Huiyan Sang of the Department of Statistics.

All work conducted for the dissertation was completed by the student, under the supervision of Matthew A. Papanikolas of the Department of Mathematics.

## Funding Sources

Graduate study was supported by a fellowship from Texas A\&M University and partially by NSF Grant DMS-1501362.

## NOMENCLATURE

| $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ | finite field with $q=p^{n}$ elements. |
| :--- | :--- |
| $A$ | $\mathbb{F}_{q}[\theta]$, the polynomial ring in $\theta$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}$. |
| $k$ | $\mathbb{F}_{q}(\theta)$, the fraction field of $A$. |
| $k_{\infty}$ | $\mathbb{F}_{q}((1 / \theta))$, the completion of $k$ with respect to $\|\cdot\|_{\infty}$. |
| $\mathbb{K}$ | the completion of an algebraic closure of $k_{\infty}$. |
| $\bar{k}$ | the algebraic closure of $k$ inside $\mathbb{K}$. |
| $\mathbf{A}$ | $\mathbb{F}_{q}[t]$, the polynomial ring in $t$ over $\mathbb{F}_{q}, t$ independent from $\theta$. |
| $\mathbf{k}$ | $\mathbb{F}_{q}(t)$, the fraction field of $\mathbf{A}$. |
| $\mathbb{T}$ | $\left\{\left.\sum_{h=0}^{\infty} a_{h} t^{h} \in \mathbb{K} \llbracket t \rrbracket\left\|\lim { }_{h \rightarrow \infty}\right\| a_{h}\right\|_{\infty}=0\right\}$, the Tate algebra |
|  | of the closed unit disk of $\mathbb{K}$. |
| $\mathbb{L}$ | the fraction field of $\mathbb{T}$. |
| $F^{\text {sep }}$ | a separable algebraic closure of a field $F$. |
| $\mathrm{GL}_{r} / F$ | for the field $F$, the $F$-group scheme of invertible $r \times r$ |
|  | matrices. |

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

## Page

ABSTRACT ..... ii
DEDICATION ..... iii
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS ..... iv
CONTRIBUTORS AND FUNDING SOURCES ..... v
NOMENCLATURE ..... vi
TABLE OF CONTENTS ..... vii

1. INTRODUCTION ..... 1
1.1 Introduction ..... 1
1.2 Hyperderivatives of periods and logarithms ..... 2
1.3 Structure of the dissertation ..... 5
2. PRELIMINARIES ..... 7
2.1 Notation ..... 7
2.2 Dual $t$-motives and $t$-motives ..... 7
2.3 The difference Galois group. ..... 9
2.4 Hyperderivatives and Hyperdifferential operators ..... 11
2.5 Prolongation of dual $t$-motives ..... 12
3. RIGID ANALYTIC TRIVIALIZATIONS, PROLONGATIONS AND HYPERDERIVA- TIVES ..... 15
3.1 Anderson $t$-modules and associated dual $t$-motives ..... 15
3.2 Rigid analytic trivializations of Drinfeld modules, and prolongations ..... 18
3.3 Hyperderivatives of periods and logarithms, and prolongations ..... 20
4. HYPERDERIVATIVES OF PERIODS AND QUASI-PERIODS ..... 21
4.1 The $t$-adic Tate module, Anderson generation functions and prolongations ..... 21
4.2 Elements of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ ..... 27
4.3 Lower bound on Dimension of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ ..... 31
4.4 Upper bound on Dimension of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ ..... 36
4.5 Algebraic Independence of periods and quasi-periods ..... 45
5. HYPERDERIVATIVES OF LOGARITHMS AND QUASI-LOGARITHMS ..... 47
$5.1 t$-motives and quasi-logarithms ..... 47
5.2 Non-triviality in $\operatorname{Ext}_{\mathcal{T}}^{1}\left(\mathbf{1}, \mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$ ..... 49
5.3 Construction of the $t$-motives $Y$ and $N$ ..... 51
5.4 Algebraic independence of logarithms and quasi-logarithms ..... 65
6. CONCLUSION ..... 72
REFERENCES ..... 75
APPENDIX A. DIFFERENTIAL ALGEBRAIC GEOMETRY ..... 79
A. 1 Differential algebra in positive characteristic ..... 79
A. 2 Kolchin topology in positive characteristic ..... 81

## 1. INTRODUCTION

### 1.1 Introduction

Drinfeld modules were introduced as "elliptic modules" by Drinfeld, as a function field analogue of elliptic curves [18]. Later, Anderson defined higher dimensional generalizations of Drinfeld modules, called $t$-modules [1]. Yu proved several transcendence results concerning periods and logarithms of Drinfeld modules [41], [42], and proved the Sub- $t$-module theorem [44], a remarkable result regarding linear independence among logarithms of Anderson $t$-modules. Brownawell [4], and Brownawell and Papanikolas [6] proved linear independence results concerning logarithms and quasi-logarithms of certain $t$-modules. Thiery [39] proved algebraic independence results among periods and quasi-periods of rank 2 Drinfeld modules with complex multiplication. Concerning hyperderivatives, algebraic independence results among hyperderivatives of the period of the Carlitz module (rank 1 Drinfeld module) were proved by Denis [15], [16], [17] and Maurischat [28]. Further work in this direction was also done in unpublished work by Brownawell and van der Poorten. Utilizing Yu's sub-t-module theorem, Brownawell and Denis proved linear independence of hyperderivatives of logarithms and quasi-logarithms of Drinfeld modules [3], [5]. Shortly after this, Brownawell proved linear independence results among hyperderivatives of several logarithms and quasi-logarithms of Drinfeld modules [4].

In this dissertation, we prove all algebraic independence results among hyperderivatives of periods, quasi-periods, logarithms and quasi-logarithms of Drinfeld modules. To prove our results, we employ Papanikolas' theorem [34, Thm. 1.1.7] on the transcendence degree of the period matrix of a $t$-motive and the dimension of its Galois group. Using this result, Chang and Papanikolas have subsequently proved algebraic independence results among periods, quasi-periods, logarithms and quasi-logarithms of Drinfeld modules [11], [12].

### 1.2 Hyperderivatives of periods and logarithms

Let $\mathbb{F}_{q}$ be a finite field, where $q$ is a positive power of a prime number $p$. Letting $\theta$ be an indeterminate, we set $A:=\mathbb{F}_{q}[\theta], k:=\mathbb{F}_{q}(\theta)$ and $k_{\infty}:=\mathbb{F}_{q}((1 / \theta))$, the completion of $k$ at its infinite place. We further set $\mathbb{K}$ to be the completion of an algebraic closure of $k_{\infty}$ and let $\bar{k}$ and $k^{\text {sep }}$ be the algebraic closure and the separable closure respectively of $k$ inside $\mathbb{K}$. For a variable $t$ independent from $\theta$, we further define $\mathbf{A}:=\mathbb{F}_{q}[t]$ and $\mathbf{k}:=\mathbb{F}_{q}(t)$.

For $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, we define the $n$-fold Frobenius twist $\tau^{n}: \mathbb{K}((t)) \rightarrow \mathbb{K}((t))$ by setting for $f=$ $\sum_{i} a_{i} t^{i}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\tau^{n}(f):=f^{(n)}=\sum_{i} a_{i}^{q^{n}} t^{i} \tag{1.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

For a field $K \subseteq \mathbb{K}$, we define the twisted power series ring $K \llbracket \tau \rrbracket$ such that $\tau f=f^{q} \tau$ for all $f \in K$. Then, we define the twisted polynomial ring $K[\tau]$ as the subring of $K \llbracket \tau \rrbracket$, where $K[\tau]$ is viewed as a subalgebra of the $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-linear endomorphisms of the additive group of $K$.

For a field $k \subseteq K \subseteq \mathbb{K}$, a Drinfeld A-module of rank $r$ defined over $K$ is an $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-algebra homomorphism

$$
\rho: \mathbf{A} \rightarrow K[\tau]
$$

uniquely determined by $\rho_{t}=\theta+\kappa_{1} \tau+\cdots+\kappa_{r} \tau^{r}$ such that $\kappa_{r} \neq 0$. The exponential function associated to $\rho$ is given by $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(z)=z+\sum_{h \geq 1} \alpha_{h} z^{q^{h}} \in K \llbracket z \rrbracket$ and it satisfies the functional equation $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(\theta z)=\rho_{t}\left(\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(z)\right)$. The period lattice of $\rho$ is the kernel $\Lambda_{\rho}$ of $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}$, which is a free and finitely generated discrete A-submodule of rank $r$ inside $\mathbb{K}$ (see $\S 3.1$ for details about general Anderson $t$-modules).

The de Rham cohomology theory for Drinfeld modules was developed by Anderson, Deligne, Gekeler and Yu [20], [42]. A $\rho$-biderivation is an $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-linear map $\delta: \mathbf{A} \rightarrow \mathbb{K}[\tau] \tau$ satisfying

$$
\delta_{a b}=a(\theta) \delta_{b}+\delta_{a} \rho_{b} \quad \forall a, b \in \mathbf{A} .
$$

Let $u \in \mathbb{K}[\tau]$. Then, the $\rho$-biderivation $\delta^{(u)}$ defined by $\delta_{a}^{(u)}=u \rho_{a}-a(\theta) u, \forall a \in \mathbf{A}$ is called
an inner biderivation. If $u \in \mathbb{K}[\tau] \tau$, then $\delta^{(u)}$ is said to be strictly inner. The set of $\rho$-biderivations $\operatorname{Der}(\rho)$ forms a $\mathbb{K}$-vector space. The set of inner biderivations $\operatorname{Der}_{\text {in }}(\rho)$ and the set of strictly inner biderivations $\operatorname{Der}_{\text {si }}(\rho)$ are also $\mathbb{K}$-vector subspaces. We define the de Rham module for $\rho$ to be $\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{DR}}^{1}(\rho):=\operatorname{Der}(\rho) / \operatorname{Der}_{\mathrm{si}}(\rho)$.

For each $\delta \in \operatorname{Der}(\rho)$ there is a unique $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-linear and entire power series $\mathrm{F}_{\delta}(z)=\sum_{i \geq 1} c_{i} z^{(i)} \in$ $\mathbb{K} \llbracket z \rrbracket$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathrm{F}_{\delta}(a(\theta) z)=a(\theta) \mathrm{F}_{\delta}(z)+\delta_{a} \operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(z), \quad \forall a \in \mathbf{A} \tag{1.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

We call $\mathrm{F}_{\delta}$ the quasi-periodic function associated to $\delta$. For $\lambda \in \Lambda_{\rho}$, the value $\mathrm{F}_{\delta}(\lambda)$ is called a quasi-period of $\rho$. For $u \in \mathbb{K}$ satisfying $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(u) \in K$ the value $F_{\delta}(u)$, which is a coordinate of logarithms on quasi-periodic extensions, is called a quasi-logarithm of $\rho$ (see [6], [32]).

Since every $\rho$-biderivation $\delta$ is uniquely determined by the image $\delta_{t}$, a $\mathbb{K}$-basis of $\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{DR}}^{1}(\rho)$ is represented by $\left\{\delta_{1}, \ldots, \delta_{r}\right\}$, where $\delta_{1}$ is the inner biderivation such that $\left(\delta_{1}\right)_{t}=\rho_{t}-\theta$, and $\delta_{i}(t)=\tau^{i-1}$ for $i=2, \ldots, r$. We see that $F_{\delta^{(1)}}(z)=\operatorname{Exp}_{\phi}(z)-z$, and so $F_{\delta^{(1)}}(\lambda)=-\lambda$ for all $\lambda \in \Lambda_{\rho}$. Thus, if we take $\left\{\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r}\right\}$ to be an A-basis of $\Lambda_{\rho}$ and we set $F_{\tau^{i-1}}(z):=F_{\delta_{i}}(z)$ for $i=2, \ldots, r$, then we define the period matrix of $\rho$ to be

$$
\mathbf{P}_{\rho}:=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\lambda_{1} & F_{\tau}\left(\lambda_{1}\right) & \ldots & F_{\tau^{r-1}}\left(\lambda_{1}\right)  \tag{1.3}\\
\lambda_{2} & F_{\tau}\left(\lambda_{2}\right) & \ldots & F_{\tau^{r-1}}\left(\lambda_{2}\right) \\
\vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\
\lambda_{r} & F_{\tau}\left(\lambda_{r}\right) & \ldots & F_{\tau^{r-1}}\left(\lambda_{r}\right)
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Using Papanikolas' result [34, Thm. 1.1.7], Chang and Papanikolas proved algebraic independence of periods and quasi-periods of Drinfeld modules. We define $\operatorname{End}(\rho):=\left\{x \in \mathbb{K} \mid x \Lambda_{\rho} \subseteq\right.$ $\left.\Lambda_{\rho}\right\}$ and let $K_{\rho}$ be its fraction field.

Theorem 1 (Chang-Papanikolas [12, Thm. 1.2.2]). Let $\rho$ be a Drinfeld A-module of rank $r$ defined over $\bar{k}$. Then

$$
\operatorname{tr} . \operatorname{deg}_{\bar{k}} \bar{k}\left(\mathbf{P}_{\rho}\right)=r^{2} / s
$$

where $s=\left[K_{\rho}: k\right]$.

The first goal of the dissertation is to extend this result to algebraic independence of hyperderivatives of periods and quasi-periods of Drinfeld modules. The hyperderivative $\partial_{\theta}^{j}: k \rightarrow k$ is defined by $\partial_{\theta}^{j}\left(\theta^{m}\right):=\binom{m}{j} \theta^{m-j}$ where $j \geq 1$ and $\binom{m}{j}$ is the binomial coefficient, and it satisfies the product rule $\partial_{\theta}^{j}(a b)=\sum_{i_{1}+i_{2}=j} \partial_{\theta}^{i_{1}}(a) \partial_{\theta}^{i_{2}}(b)$ for all $a, b \in k$. Moreover, $\partial_{\theta}^{j}$ extends uniquely to $k^{\text {sep }}$ and $k_{\infty}^{\text {sep }}$ (see $\S 2.4$ for a detailed review of hyperderivatives).

If the Drinfeld A-module $\rho$ is defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$, then Denis [16, p. 6] showed that the periods and quasi-periods of $\rho$ have coordinates in $k_{\infty}^{\text {sep }}$ (see also [32, Lem. 4.1.19]). Therefore, for $n \geq 0$ we can consider $\partial_{\theta}^{n}\left(\mathbf{P}_{\rho}\right)$, where we take hyperderivatives entrywise. Our first main result is as follows (restated as Theorem 12):

Theorem 2. Let $\rho$ be a Drinfeld A-module of rank $r$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$ and suppose that $K_{\rho}$ is separable over $k$. If $s=\left[K_{\rho}: k\right]$, then for $n \geq 1$, we have

$$
\operatorname{tr} \cdot \operatorname{deg}_{\bar{k}} \bar{k}\left(\mathbf{P}_{\rho}, \partial_{\theta}^{1}\left(\mathbf{P}_{\rho}\right), \ldots, \partial_{\theta}^{n}\left(\mathbf{P}_{\rho}\right)\right)=(n+1) \cdot r^{2} / s
$$

By constructing a suitable $t$-motive and calculating the dimension of its Galois group, Chang and Papanikolas proved the algebraic independence among logarithms and quasi-logarithms of Drinfeld modules.

Theorem 3 (Chang-Papanikolas [12, Thm. 5.1.5]). Let $\rho$ be a Drinfeld A-module defined over $\bar{k}$. Let $u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w} \in \mathbb{K}$ with $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(u_{i}\right)=\alpha_{i} \in \bar{k}$ for each $i=1, \ldots, w$ and suppose that $\operatorname{dim}_{K_{\rho}} \operatorname{Span}_{K_{\rho}}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r}, u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w}\right)=r / s+w$. Then,

$$
\operatorname{tr} . \operatorname{deg}_{\bar{k}} \bar{k}\left(\bigcup_{i=1}^{r-1} \bigcup_{m=1}^{w} \bigcup_{j=1}^{r}\left\{\lambda_{j}, F_{\tau^{i}}\left(\lambda_{j}\right), u_{m}, F_{\tau^{i}}\left(u_{m}\right)\right\}\right)=r^{2} / s+r w
$$

Denis [16, p. 6] showed that, for a Drinfeld A-module $\rho$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$ and $\rho$-biderivation $\delta$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$, if $u \in \mathbb{K}$ such that $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(u) \in k^{\text {sep }}$, then $u \in k_{\infty}^{\text {sep }}$ and $F_{\delta}(u) \in k_{\infty}^{\text {sep }}$. (see also [32, Lem. 4.1.19]). Therefore, for $n \geq 0$ we can consider $\partial_{\theta}^{n}(u)$ and $\partial_{\theta}^{n}\left(F_{\delta}(u)\right)$. Building on Theorem 2
and utilizing Theorem 3, we create suitable $t$-motives and prove algebraic independence results among hyperderivatives of logarithms and quasi-logarithms of Drinfeld modules. Our second main result is as follows (restated as Theorem 14):
 k. Let $u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w} \in \mathbb{K}$ with $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(u_{i}\right)=\alpha_{i} \in k^{\text {sep }}$ for each $i=1 \ldots, w$ and suppose that $\operatorname{dim}_{K_{\rho}} \operatorname{Span}_{K_{\rho}}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r}, u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w}\right)=r / s+w$. Then,
$\operatorname{tr} \cdot \operatorname{deg}_{\bar{k}} \bar{k}\left(\bigcup_{s=0}^{n} \bigcup_{i=1}^{r-1} \bigcup_{m=1}^{w} \bigcup_{j=1}^{r}\left\{\partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(\lambda_{j}\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\tau^{i}}\left(\lambda_{j}\right)\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(u_{m}\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\tau^{i}}\left(u_{m}\right)\right)\right\}\right)=(n+1) \cdot\left(r^{2} / s+r w\right)$.

Returning to an arbitrary basis $\left\{\delta_{1}, \ldots, \delta_{r}\right\}$ of $\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{DR}}^{1}(\rho)$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$, we further deduce the following corollary.

Corollary 1. Let $\rho$ be a Drinfeld A-module defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$. Suppose that $K_{\rho}$ is separable over k. Let $u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w} \in \mathbb{K}$ with $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(u_{i}\right)=\alpha_{i} \in k^{\text {sep }}$ for each $i=1, \ldots, w$. Let $\delta_{1}, \ldots, \delta_{r}$ be a basis of $\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{DR}}^{1}(\rho)$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$. If $u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w}$ are linearly independent over $K_{\rho}$, then for $n \geq 1$ the $(n+1)$ rw quantities

$$
\left\{\bigcup_{s=0}^{n} \bigcup_{j=1}^{r}\left(\partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\delta_{j}}\left(u_{1}\right)\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\delta_{j}}\left(u_{2}\right)\right), \ldots, \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\delta_{j}}\left(u_{w}\right)\right)\right)\right\}
$$

are algebraically independent over $\bar{k}$.

### 1.3 Structure of the dissertation

Since, to prove our main theorems, the key result we use is Papanikolas' theorem [34, Thm. 1.1.7] which shows that the dimension of the Galois group associated to a $t$-motive is equal to the transcendence degree of the entries of the period matrix of the $t$-motive, in $\S 2.2$ and $\S 2.3$ we give necessary background concerning $t$-motives and $t$-motivic Galois groups. Next, we give a brief review of hyperderivatives and then present a summary of prolongations of dual $t$-motives as introduced by Maurischat [28].

It proved to be the case that prolongations provide the necessary framework for the study of hyperderivatives of periods and logarithms of Anderson $t$-modules. The author and Papanikolas [32] showed that using prolongations of $t$-motives, one can recover hyperderivatives of entries of the period matrix of the $t$-motive (see Theorem 7), and so to prove Theorem 2, for $n \geq 1$ we calculate the Galois group $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$, where $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$ is the $n$-prolongation of the $t$-motive $M_{\rho}$ associated to the Drinfeld A-module $\rho$.

For a Drinfeld A-module $\rho$ defined over $K$, where $k \subseteq K \subseteq \bar{k}$ with $[K: k]<\infty$, there is a representation $\varphi_{t}: \operatorname{Gal}\left(K^{\mathrm{sep}} / K\right) \rightarrow \mathrm{GL}_{r}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q} \llbracket t \rrbracket\right)$ coming from the Galois action on the $t$-power torsion points $\rho\left[t^{m}\right]:=\left\{x \in \mathbb{K} \mid \rho_{t^{m}}(x)=0\right\}$. In $\S 4$, using Anderson generating functions and $\varphi_{t}$ we determine the Galois representation on the $t$-adic Tate module of the $n$-th prolongation Anderson $t$-module $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ associated to the Drinfeld $\mathbf{A}$-module $\rho$ (Lemma 2), and prove that the image of this Galois representation is naturally contained in the $\mathbf{k}_{t}$-valued points of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ (Theorem 8).

The main difficulty in proving Theorem 2 is that unlike the Drinfeld module case (see [12, §3]) where Pink's theorem [36, Thm. 0.2] on the openness of the Zariski closure of the image of the Galois representation was used to calculate the Galois group $\Gamma_{M_{\rho}}$, the Zariski closure of the image in our case need not be open. However, by building on information from the $n=0$ case, employing differential algebraic geometry (Theorem 10) and closely examining the elements of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ (Theorem 9), we are able to compute $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ explicitly and prove Theorem 2.

In $\S 5$, for $u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w} \in \mathbb{K}$ satisfying $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(u_{i}\right) \in k^{\text {sep }}$ we build on results of $\S 4$ and utilize the ideas of $[12, \S 4$ and $\S 5]$ to construct new $t$-motives $Y_{1, n}, \ldots, Y_{w, n}$. These $t$-motives are constructed using the prolongation $t$-motive $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$ such that the entries of the period matrix of $\oplus_{m=1}^{w} Y_{m, n}$ comprise $\bigcup_{s=0}^{n} \bigcup_{i=1}^{r-1} \bigcup_{m=1}^{w}\left\{\partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(u_{m}\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\tau^{i}}\left(u_{m}\right)\right)\right\}$. We utilize properties of prolongations and hyperderivatives to prove that there is a surjective map from the Galois group of $Y_{m, n}$ to the Galois group of $Y_{m, \ell}$ for $\ell \leq n$ and $m=1, \ldots, w$ (Lemma 5). Adapting the ideas of the proof of [12, Thm. 5.1.5] and using Lemma 5, we prove Theorem 4.

## 2. PRELIMINARIES

### 2.1 Notation

For $n \in \mathbb{Z}$, recall the $n$-fold Frobenius twist $\tau^{n}$ from (1.1). In some cases, we will write $\sigma$ for $\tau^{-1}$. For a matrix $M=\left(m_{i j}\right)$ with entries in $\mathbb{K}((t))$, we define $M^{(n)}$ by setting $M^{(n)}=\left(m_{i j}^{(n)}\right)$. Let $\bar{k}(t)\left[\sigma, \sigma^{-1}\right]$ be the Laurent polynomial ring over $\bar{k}(t)$ in $\sigma$ subject to the relation

$$
\sigma f=f^{(-1)} \sigma, \quad \forall f \in \bar{k}(t)
$$

For a field $K \subseteq \mathbb{K}$, recall the twisted power series ring $K \llbracket \tau \rrbracket$ and the twisted polynomial ring $K[\tau]$ given by $\tau f=f^{(1)} \tau$ for all $f \in K$. Similarly, we define $K \llbracket \sigma \rrbracket$ and $K[\sigma]$ when $K$ is a perfect field. For $b=\sum c_{i} \tau^{i} \in \mathbb{K}[\tau]$, we define $b^{*}:=\sum b^{(-i)} \sigma^{i} \in \mathbb{K}[\sigma]$. If $B=\left(b_{i j}\right) \in \operatorname{Mat}_{e \times d}(\mathbb{K}[\tau])=$ $\operatorname{Mat}_{e \times d}(\mathbb{K})[\tau]$, then $B^{*}:=\left(b_{j i}^{*}\right)$. Thus, if $B \in \operatorname{Mat}_{e \times d}(\mathbb{K}[\tau])$ and $C \in \operatorname{Mat}_{d \times h}(\mathbb{K}[\tau])$, then $(B C)^{*}=C^{*} B^{*}$. Moreover, if $B=\beta_{0}+\beta_{1} \tau+\cdots+\beta_{\ell} \tau^{\ell}$, then we set $\mathrm{d} B:=\beta_{0}$.

### 2.2 Dual $t$-motives and $t$-motives

The reader is directed to [34] for details. A pre-t-motive $M$ is a left $\bar{k}(t)\left[\sigma, \sigma^{-1}\right]$-module that is finite dimensional over $\bar{k}(t)$. We denote by $\mathcal{P}$ the category of pre- $t$-motives whose morphisms are the left $\bar{k}(t)\left[\sigma, \sigma^{-1}\right]$-module homomorphisms. Let $\boldsymbol{m} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r \times 1}(M)$ be so that its entries consist of a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis of $M$. Then, there is a matrix $\Phi \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(\bar{k}(t))$ such that

$$
\sigma \boldsymbol{m}=\Phi \boldsymbol{m}
$$

where the action of $\sigma$ on $\boldsymbol{m}$ is entry-wise. We say that $M$ is rigid analytically trivial if there exists a matrix $\Psi \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(\mathbb{L})$ such that

$$
\Psi^{(-1)}=\Phi \Psi .
$$

The matrix $\Psi$ is called a rigid analytic trivialization for $\Phi$. Set $M^{\dagger}:=\mathbb{L} \otimes_{\bar{k}(t)} M$, where we give $M^{\dagger}$ a left $\bar{k}(t)\left[\sigma, \sigma^{-1}\right]$-module by letting $\sigma$ act diagonally:

$$
\sigma(f \otimes m):=f^{(-1)} \otimes \sigma m, \quad \forall f \in \bar{k}(t), m \in M
$$

If we let

$$
M^{B}:=\left(M^{\dagger}\right)^{\sigma}:=\left\{\mu \in M^{\dagger}: \sigma \mu=\mu\right\},
$$

then $M^{B}$ is a finite dimensional vector space over $\mathbf{k}$, and $M \mapsto M^{B}$ is a covariant functor from $\mathcal{P}$ to the category of k-vector spaces. The natural map $\mathbb{L} \otimes_{\bar{k}(t)} M^{B} \rightarrow M^{\dagger}$ is an isomorphism if and only if $M$ is rigid analytically trivial (see [34, §3.3]). If $\Psi$ is a rigid analytic trivialization of $\Phi$, then the entries of $\Psi^{-1} \boldsymbol{m}$ form a k-basis for $M^{B}$ (see [34, Thm. 3.3.9(b)]). Then, by [34, Thm. 3.3.15], the category of rigid analytically trivial pre-t-motives $\mathcal{R}$ forms a neutral Tannakian category over $\mathbf{k}$ with fiber functor $M \mapsto M^{B}$. Its trivial object is denoted by 1 .

We now consider A-finite dual $t$-motives, which were first introduced in [2] (see also [24], [32]). A dual t-motive $\mathcal{M}$ is a left $\bar{k}[t, \sigma]$-module that is free and finitely generated as a left $\bar{k}[\sigma]-$ module and such that $(t-\theta)^{s} \mathcal{M} \subseteq \sigma \mathcal{M}$ for $s \in \mathbb{N}$ sufficiently large. If, in addition, $\mathcal{M}$ is free and finitely generated as a left $\bar{k}[t]$-module, then $\mathcal{M}$ is said to be $\mathbf{A}$-finite. Thus, if $\boldsymbol{m} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r \times 1}(\mathcal{M})$ is a $\bar{k}[t]$-basis for $\mathcal{M}$, then there is a matrix $\Phi \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r}(\bar{k}[t])$ such that $\sigma(\boldsymbol{m})=\Phi \boldsymbol{m}$ with $\operatorname{det} \Phi=$ $c(t-\theta)^{s}$ for some $c \in \bar{k}^{\times}, s \geq 0$. We say that $\mathcal{M}$ is rigid analytically trivial if there exists a matrix $\Psi \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(\mathbb{T})$ so that $\Psi^{(-1)}=\Phi \Psi$. In [2], the term "dual $t$-motives" is used for A-finite dual $t$-motives. We will consider both dual $t$-motives and A -finite dual $t$-motives [24].

Given an A-finite dual $t$-motive $\mathcal{M}$,

$$
M:=\bar{k}(t) \otimes_{\bar{k}[t]} \mathcal{M}
$$

is a pre-t-motive where $\sigma(f \otimes m):=f^{(-1)} \otimes \sigma m$. Then, $\mathcal{M} \mapsto M$ is a functor from the category of A-finite dual $t$-motives to the category of pre- $t$-motives.

The category $\mathcal{A}^{I}$ of $\mathbf{A}$-finite dual t-motives up to isogeny, is the category whose objects are generated by A-finite dual $t$-motives and morphisms are defined as follows: for A-finite dual $t$-motives $\mathcal{M}$ and $\mathcal{N}, \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{A}^{I}}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}):=\operatorname{Hom}_{\bar{k}[t, \sigma]}(\mathcal{M}, \mathcal{N}) \otimes_{\mathbf{A}} \mathbf{k}$. We further define the full subcategory $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{R}^{I}$ of rigid analytically trivial A-finite dual $t$-motives up to isogeny by restriction. Then, the functor $\mathcal{M} \mapsto M: \mathcal{A R}^{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$ is fully faithful (see [34, Thm. 3.4.9]) and we define $\mathcal{T}$, the category of $t$-motives, to be the strictly full Tannakian subcategory of $\mathcal{R}$ generated by the essential image of this functor.

For a $t$-motive $M$, we let $\mathcal{T}_{M}$ be the strictly full Tannakian subcategory of $\mathcal{T}$ generated by M. As $\mathcal{T}_{M}$ is a neutral Tannakian category over $\mathbf{k}$, there is an affine group scheme $\Gamma_{M}$ over $\mathbf{k}$, a subgroup of $\mathrm{GL}_{r} / \mathbf{k}$, so that $\mathcal{T}_{M}$ is equivalent to the category of finite dimensional representations of $\Gamma_{M}$ over $\mathbf{k}$, i.e., $\mathcal{T}_{M} \approx \operatorname{Rep}\left(\Gamma_{M}, \mathbf{k}\right)$ (see [34, §3.5]).

### 2.3 The difference Galois group

For this section, the reader is directed to [34] for details. A triple of fields $F \subseteq K \subseteq L$ along with an automorphism $\sigma: L \rightarrow L$ is said to be $\sigma$-admissible if $\sigma$ restricts to automorphisms of $F$ and $K ; F=F^{\sigma}=K^{\sigma}=L^{\sigma}$; and $L$ is a separable extension of $K$. For a fixed $\sigma$-admissible triple of fields $(F, K, L)$, we fix $\Phi \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(K)$ and suppose that $\Psi \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(L)$ satisfies

$$
\sigma(\Psi)=\Phi \Psi
$$

We define a $K$-algebra homomorphism $\nu: K[X, 1 / \operatorname{det} X] \rightarrow L$ by setting $\nu\left(X_{i j}\right):=\Psi_{i j}$, where $X=\left(X_{i j}\right)$ is an $r \times r$ matrix of independent variables. We let

$$
\mathfrak{p}:=\operatorname{ker} \nu, \quad \Sigma:=\operatorname{Im} \nu=K[\Psi, 1 / \operatorname{det} \Psi] \subseteq L
$$

Setting $Z_{\Psi}=\operatorname{Spec} \Sigma$, we see that $Z_{\Psi}$ is the smallest closed subscheme of $\mathrm{GL}_{r / K}$ such that $\Psi \in Z_{\Psi}(L)$.

Set $\Psi_{1}, \Psi_{2} \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}\left(L \otimes_{K} L\right)$ to be such that $\left(\Psi_{1}\right)_{i j}=\Psi_{i j} \otimes 1$ and $\left(\Psi_{2}\right)_{i j}=1 \otimes \Psi_{i j}$, and let
$\widetilde{\Psi}:=\Psi_{1}^{-1} \Psi_{2} \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}\left(L \otimes_{K} L\right)$. We define an $F$-algebra homomorphism $\mu: F[X, 1 / \operatorname{det} X] \rightarrow$ $L \otimes_{K} L$ by setting $\mu\left(X_{i j}\right):=\widetilde{\Psi}_{i j}$. We let

$$
\mathfrak{q}:=\operatorname{ker} \mu, \quad \Delta:=\operatorname{Im} \mu .
$$

Setting $\Gamma_{\Psi}=\operatorname{Spec} \Delta$, we see that $\Gamma_{\Psi}$ is the smallest closed subscheme of $\mathrm{GL}_{r / K}$ such that $\widetilde{\Psi} \in \Gamma_{\Psi}\left(L \otimes_{K} L\right)$.

Now suppose that $M$ is a $t$-motive and let $\Phi \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(\bar{k}(t))$ represent multiplication by $\sigma$ on $M$. Let $\Psi \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(\mathbb{L})$ satisfy $\Psi^{(-1)}=\Phi \Psi$. Using the $\sigma$-admissible triple $(F, K, L)=(\mathbf{k}, \bar{k}(t), \mathbb{L})$, the following properties hold.

Theorem 5 (Papanikolas [34, §4]). Let $M$ be a $t$-motive, and let $\Phi \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(\bar{k}(t))$ represent multiplication by $\sigma$ on $M$. Let $\Psi \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(\mathbb{L})$ satisfy $\Psi^{(-1)}=\Phi \Psi$.
(a) $\Gamma_{\Psi}$ is a closed $\mathbf{k}$-subgroup scheme of $\mathrm{GL}_{r / \mathbf{k}}$.
(b) The closed $\bar{k}(t)$-subscheme $Z_{\Psi}$ is stable under right-multiplication by $\bar{k}(t) \times_{\mathbf{k}} \Gamma_{\Psi}$ and is a $\bar{k}(t) \times_{\mathbf{k}} \Gamma_{\Psi}$-torsor over $\bar{k}(t)$. In particular, $\Gamma_{\Psi}(\overline{\mathbb{L}})=\Psi^{-1} Z_{\Psi}(\overline{\mathbb{L}})$.
(c) $Z_{\Psi}$ is absolutely irreducible and smooth over $\overline{k(t)}$.
(d) The $\mathbf{k}$-scheme $\Gamma_{\Psi}$ is absolutely irreducible and smooth over $\overline{\mathbf{k}}$.
(e) $\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\Psi}=\operatorname{tr} \cdot \operatorname{deg}_{\bar{k}(t)} \Lambda_{\Psi}$, where $\Lambda_{\Psi}$ is the fraction field of $\Sigma_{\Psi}$.
(f) $\Gamma_{\Psi} \cong \Gamma_{M}$ over $\mathbf{k}$.

Furthermore, the main theorem of [34] is as follows.

Theorem 6 (Papanikolas [34, Thm. 1.1.7]). Let M be a t-motive, and let $\Gamma_{M}$ be its Galois group. Suppose that $\Phi \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(\bar{k}(t)) \cap \operatorname{Mat}_{r}(\bar{k}[t])$ represents multiplication by $\sigma$ on $M$ and that $\operatorname{det} \Phi=$ $c(t-\theta)^{s}, c \in \bar{k}^{\times}$. Let $\Psi$ be a rigid analytic trivialization of $\Phi$ in $\mathrm{GL}_{r}(\mathbb{T})$. Then, $\operatorname{tr} . \operatorname{deg}_{\bar{k}} \bar{k}\left(\left.\Psi\right|_{t=\theta}\right)=$ $\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{M}$.

### 2.4 Hyperderivatives and Hyperdifferential operators

In this section, we review results concerning hyperderivatives and hyperdifferential operators. The reader is directed to [3], [26] and [32] for more details and proofs. For $m, j \geq 0$, let $\binom{m}{j} \in \mathbb{N}$ be the binomial coefficient. Then, for $F$ a field where $\theta$ is transcendental over $F$, the $F$-linear map $\partial_{\theta}^{j}: F[\theta] \rightarrow F[\theta]$ defined by setting $\partial_{\theta}^{j}\left(\theta^{m}\right)=\binom{m}{j} \theta^{m-j}$ is called the $j$-th hyperdifferential operator with respect to $\theta$. For each $f \in F[\theta]$, we call $\partial_{\theta}^{j}(f)$ the $j$-th hyperderivative of $f$. The definition of $\partial_{\theta}^{j}$ extends naturally to $\partial_{\theta}^{j}: F \llbracket \theta \rrbracket \rightarrow F \llbracket \theta \rrbracket$. The hyperdifferential operators satisfy various identities including the product rule $\partial_{\theta}^{j}(f g)=\sum_{i=0}^{j} \partial_{\theta}^{i}(f) \partial_{\theta}^{j-i}(g)$ and the composition rule $\partial_{\theta}^{i}\left(\partial_{\theta}^{j}(f)\right)=\binom{i+j}{j} \partial_{\theta}^{i+j}(f)$.

The product rule extends $\partial_{\theta}^{j}$ to the Laurent series field $F((\theta))$ where as usual for $m>0$, we have $\binom{-m}{j}=(-1)^{j}\binom{m+j-1}{j}$. Similarly, for a place $v$ of $F(\theta)$ there is a unique extension $\partial_{\theta}^{j}$ : $F(\theta)_{v}^{\text {sep }} \rightarrow F(\theta)_{v}^{\text {sep }}$. The formulas that we will use are summarized in the following proposition.

Proposition 1 (see Brownawell [3, §7], Jeong [26, §2], [32, Lem. 2.4.3]). Let F be a field of characteristic $p>0$, and let $v$ be a place of $F(\theta)$. The hyperdifferential operators with respect to $\theta, \partial_{\theta}^{j}: F(\theta)_{v}^{\text {sep }} \rightarrow F(\theta)_{v}^{\text {sep }}, j \geqslant 0$, satisfy the following.
(a) For $f_{1}, \ldots, f_{s} \in F(\theta)_{v}^{\text {sep }}$ and $j \geq 0$,

$$
\partial_{\theta}^{j}\left(f_{1} \cdots f_{s}\right)=\sum_{\substack{k_{1}, \ldots, k_{s} \geq 0 \\ k_{1}+\cdots+k_{s}=j}} \partial_{\theta}^{k_{1}}\left(f_{1}\right) \cdots \partial_{\theta}^{k_{s}}\left(f_{s}\right) .
$$

(b) For $f \in F(\theta)_{v}^{\text {sep }}, n \geqslant 0$, and $j \geq 1$,

$$
\partial_{\theta}^{j}\left(f^{p^{n}}\right)= \begin{cases}\left(\partial_{\theta}^{k}(f)\right)^{p^{n}} & \text { if } j=k p^{n}, \\ 0 & \text { if } p^{n} \nmid j .\end{cases}
$$

(c) For $f \in F(\theta)_{v}^{\operatorname{sep}}$ and $j \geq 1$,

$$
\partial_{\theta}^{j}\left(\frac{1}{f}\right)=\sum_{k=1}^{j}\binom{j+1}{k+1} \frac{(-1)^{k}}{f^{k+1}} \partial_{\theta}^{j}\left(f^{k}\right) .
$$

For $f \in F(\theta)_{v}^{\mathrm{sep}}$ and $n \geq 1$, we define the $d$-matrix with respect to $\theta, d_{\theta, n}[f] \in \operatorname{Mat}_{n}\left(F(\theta)_{v}^{\mathrm{sep}}\right)$ to be the upper-triangular $n \times n$ matrix

$$
d_{\theta, n}[f]:=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
f & \partial_{\theta}^{1}(f) & \ldots & \ldots & \partial_{\theta}^{n-1}(f)  \tag{2.1}\\
& f & \partial_{\theta}^{1}(f) & & \vdots \\
& & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & & \ddots & \partial_{\theta}^{1}(f) \\
& & & & f
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Using the product rule, it is straightforward to see that $d_{\theta, n}[g] \cdot d_{\theta, n}[f]=d_{\theta, n}[g f]$. For a ma$\operatorname{trix} B:=\left(b_{i j}\right) \in \operatorname{Mat}_{e \times d}\left(F(\theta)_{v}^{\text {sep }}\right)$, we also define the $d$-matrix with respect to $\theta, d_{\theta, n}[B] \in$ $\operatorname{Mat}_{n e \times n d}\left(F(\theta)_{v}^{\text {sep }}\right)$ in (2.1), where for $c \geq 0$ we let $\partial_{\theta}^{c}(B):=\left(\partial_{\theta}^{c}\left(b_{i j}\right)\right) \in \operatorname{Mat}_{e \times d}\left(F(\theta)_{v}^{\text {sep }}\right)$.

We further define partial hyperderivatives for $n$ independent variables $\theta_{1}, \theta_{2} \ldots, \theta_{n}$ to be the $F$-linear maps

$$
\partial_{\theta_{\ell}}^{j}: F\left(\theta_{1}, \theta_{2}, \ldots, \theta_{n}\right) \rightarrow F\left(\theta_{1}, \theta_{2}, \ldots, \theta_{n}\right), \quad j \geq 0, \quad \ell=1, \ldots, n
$$

such that for $m \in \mathbb{Z}$ and $u, v=1, \ldots, n, u \neq v$, we have $\partial_{\theta_{u}}^{j}\left(\theta_{u}^{m}\right)=\binom{m}{j} \theta_{u}^{m-j}$ and $\partial_{\theta_{u}}^{j}\left(\theta_{v}^{m}\right)=0$. Thus, we have that $\partial_{\theta_{u}} \circ \partial_{\theta_{v}}=\partial_{\theta_{v}} \circ \partial_{\theta_{u}}$. We can define the $d$-matrix with respect to each independent variable. In this dissertation, we make use of partial hyperderivatives for two variables. For our convenience, we let the two independent variables be $t$ and $\theta$.

### 2.5 Prolongation of dual $t$-motives

We review the construction of new dual $t$-motives and $t$-modules from old ones, called prolongations, as introduced by Maurischat [28]. For a left $\bar{k}[t, \sigma]$-module $\mathcal{M}$ and $n \geq 0$, we define the
$n$-th prolongation of $\mathcal{M}$ to be the left $\bar{k}[t]$-module $\mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}$ generated by symbols $D_{i} m$, for $m \in \mathcal{M}$ and $i=0, \ldots, n$ subject to the relations
(a) $D_{i}\left(m_{1}+m_{2}\right)=D_{i} m_{1}+D_{i} m_{2}$,
(b) $D_{i}(a \cdot m)=\sum_{i=i_{1}+i_{2}} \partial_{t}^{i_{1}}(a) \cdot D_{i_{2}} m$,
where $m, m_{1}, m_{2} \in \mathcal{M}$ and $a \in \bar{k}[t]$. The $\sigma$ action on $\mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}$ given by

$$
\sigma\left(a \cdot D_{i} m\right)=a^{(-1)} \cdot D_{i}(\sigma m)
$$

where $a \in \bar{k}[t], m \in \mathcal{M}$, is well defined and thus, the $n$-th prolongation $\mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}$ of $\mathcal{M}$ is also a left $\bar{k}[t, \sigma]$-module.

Via $D_{0} m \mapsto m$, we see that $\mathrm{P}_{0} \mathcal{M}$ is naturally isomorphic to $\mathcal{M}$ and for $0 \leq \ell<n$, the $\ell$-th prolongation $\mathrm{P}_{\ell} \mathcal{M}$ is a $\bar{k}[t, \sigma]$-submodule of $\mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}$. Thus, we obtain a short exact sequence of $\bar{k}[t, \sigma]$-modules

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \rightarrow \mathrm{P}_{\ell} \mathcal{M} \rightarrow \mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{pr}} \mathrm{P}_{n-\ell-1} \mathcal{M} \rightarrow 0 \tag{2.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\operatorname{pr}\left(D_{i} m\right):=D_{i-\ell-1} m$ for $i>\ell$ and $\operatorname{pr}\left(D_{i} m\right):=0$ for $i \leq \ell$ and $m \in \mathcal{M}$.
If $\mathcal{M}$ is an A -finite dual $t$-motive, then $\mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}$ is an A -finite dual $t$-motive (see [28, Thm. 3.4]). Thus, if $\boldsymbol{m}=\left[m_{1}, \ldots, m_{r}\right]^{\top}$ is a $\bar{k}[t]$-basis of $\mathcal{M}$, then a $\bar{k}[t]$-basis of $\mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}:=\left(D_{n} \boldsymbol{m}^{\top}, D_{n-1} \boldsymbol{m}^{\top}, \ldots, \ldots, D_{0} \boldsymbol{m}^{\boldsymbol{\top}}\right)^{\top} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r(n+1) \times 1}(\bar{k}[t]) \tag{2.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $D_{i} \boldsymbol{m}:=\left(D_{i} m_{1}, \ldots, D_{i} m_{r}\right)^{\top} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r \times 1}(\bar{k}[t])$ for each $i$ (see [28, Prop. 4.2]). Also, if $\Phi \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(\bar{k}[t])$ represents multiplication by $\sigma$ on $\boldsymbol{m}$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sigma\left(\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}\right)=d_{t, n+1}[\Phi] \cdot \boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m} \tag{2.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

If $\mathcal{M}$ is rigid analytically trivial with $\Psi \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(\mathbb{T})$ so that $\Psi^{(-1)}=\Phi \Psi$, then since twisting
commutes differentiation with respect to $t$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(d_{t, n+1}[\Psi]\right)^{(-1)}=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi^{(-1)}\right]=d_{t, n+1}[\Phi \Psi]=d_{t, n+1}[\Phi] d_{t, n+1}[\Psi] \tag{2.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, $\mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}$ is rigid analytically trivial. See $[28, \S 3]$ for detailed proofs.

## 3. RIGID ANALYTIC TRIVIALIZATIONS, PROLONGATIONS AND HYPERDERIVATIVES

### 3.1 Anderson $t$-modules and associated dual $t$-motives

For a field $K \subseteq \mathbb{K}$, an Anderson $t$-module defined over $K$ is an $\mathbb{F}_{q}$-algebra homomorphism

$$
\phi: \mathbf{A} \rightarrow \operatorname{Mat}_{d}(K[\tau])
$$

such that $\phi_{t}=B_{0}+B_{1} \tau+\cdots+B_{\ell} \tau^{\ell}$, where $B_{i} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{d}(K)$ and d $\phi_{t}=B_{0}=\theta I_{d}+N$ with $I_{d}$, the $d \times d$ identity matrix and $N$, a nilpotent matrix. Then, $\phi$ defines an A-module structure on $\mathbb{K}^{d}$ via

$$
a \cdot \boldsymbol{x}=\phi_{a}(\boldsymbol{x}), \quad \forall a \in \mathbf{A}, \boldsymbol{x} \in \mathbb{K}^{d} .
$$

We say that $d$ is the dimension of $\phi$. There exists a unique power series $\operatorname{Exp}_{\phi}(\boldsymbol{z})=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} C_{i} \boldsymbol{z}^{q^{i}} \in$ $\mathbb{K} \llbracket z_{1}, \ldots, z_{d} \rrbracket^{d}, \boldsymbol{z}=\left[z_{1}, \ldots, z_{d}\right]^{\top}$ so that $C_{0}=I_{d}$ and satisfies

$$
\operatorname{Exp}\left(\mathrm{d} \phi_{a} \boldsymbol{z}\right)=\phi_{a}(\operatorname{Exp}(\boldsymbol{z}))
$$

for all $a \in \mathbf{A}$. Moreover, $\operatorname{Exp}_{\phi}(\boldsymbol{z})$ defines an entire function $\operatorname{Exp}_{\phi}: \mathbb{K}^{d} \rightarrow \mathbb{K}^{d}$. If $\operatorname{Exp}_{\phi}$ is surjective, then we say that $\phi$ is uniformizable. The kernel $\Lambda_{\phi} \subseteq \mathbb{K}^{d}$ of $\operatorname{Exp}_{\phi}$ is a free and finitely generated discrete $\mathbf{A}$-submodule and it is called the period lattice of $\phi$. If $\phi$ is uniformizable, then we have an isomorphism $\mathbb{K}^{d} / \Lambda_{\phi} \cong\left(\mathbb{K}^{d}, \phi\right)$, where $\left(\mathbb{K}^{d}, \phi\right)$ denotes $\mathbb{K}^{d}$ together with the A-module structure defined as above coming from $\phi$. If $\phi_{t}=B_{0} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{d}(K)$, then $\phi$ is said to be a trivial Anderson $t$-module.

We define the dual $t$-motive $\mathcal{M}_{\phi}$ associated to the $t$-module $\phi$ in the following way. We let $\mathcal{M}_{\phi}:=\operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times d}(\bar{k}[\sigma])$. To give $\mathcal{M}_{\phi}$ the $\bar{k}[t, \sigma]$-module structure, we set

$$
\begin{equation*}
a \cdot m=m \phi_{a}^{*}, \quad m \in \mathcal{M}_{\phi}, a \in \mathbf{A}, \tag{3.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\phi_{a}^{*}$ is defined as in $\S 2.1$. Then, as in [7, §4.4], [24] and [32, §2.3], $\mathcal{M}_{\phi}$ defines a dual $t$-motive and (3.1) gives a unique correspondence between a $t$-module and its associated dual $t$-motive. The reader is directed to [24], [32] for more information on dual $t$-motives associated to $t$-modules.

A non-trivial Anderson $t$-module of dimension 1 is called a Drinfeld A-module. We now fix a Drinfeld A-module $\rho: \mathbf{A} \rightarrow k^{\operatorname{sep}}[\tau]$ such that

$$
\rho_{t}=\theta+\kappa_{1} \tau+\cdots+\kappa_{r} \tau^{r}
$$

where $\kappa_{r} \neq 0$. We call $r$ the rank of $\rho$. Drinfeld modules are uniformizable and the rank of the period lattice $\Lambda_{\rho}$ of $\rho$ as an A-module is $r$. As defined above for $t$-modules, we define $\mathcal{M}_{\rho}:=$ $\bar{k}[\sigma]$. Then $\left\{m_{1}, m_{2}, \ldots, m_{r}\right\}=\left\{1, \sigma, \ldots, \sigma^{r-1}\right\}$ forms a $\bar{k}[t]$-basis for $\mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ (see [12, §3.3], [32, Example 3.5.13]) and with respect to this basis, multiplication by $\sigma$ on $\mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ is

$$
\Phi_{\rho}:=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
0 & 1 & \ldots & 0  \tag{3.2}\\
\vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\
0 & 0 & \ldots & 1 \\
(t-\theta) / \kappa_{r}^{(-r)} & -\kappa_{1}^{(-1)} / \kappa_{r}^{(-r)} & \ldots & -\kappa_{r-1}^{(-r+1)} / \kappa_{r}^{(-r)}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Recall from $\S 2.2$ that if $\mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ is free and finitely generated as a left $\bar{k}[t]$-module, then $\mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ is said to be A-finite. Thus, $\mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ is an A-finite dual $t$-motive. We let $M_{\rho}:=\bar{k}(t) \otimes_{\bar{k}[t]} \mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ be the pre- $t$-motive associated to $\mathcal{M}_{\rho}$.

Since we can associate an A-finite dual $t$-motive to a Drinfeld A-module, by $\S 2.5$ we can define an Anderson $t$-module $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ for $n \geq 0$ which has as an associated A -finite dual $t$-motive the $n$-th prolongation $\mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ of $\mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ (see for details, [28, §5]). The $n$-th prolongation t-module $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho: \mathbf{A} \rightarrow \operatorname{Mat}_{n+1}\left(k^{\text {sep }}[\tau]\right)$ of the Drinfeld A-module $\rho$ is of dimension $n+1$ and is defined by

$$
\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho\right)_{t}=\mathrm{d}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho\right)_{t}+\operatorname{diag}\left(\kappa_{1}\right) \tau+\cdots+\operatorname{diag}\left(\kappa_{r}\right) \tau^{r}
$$

where

$$
\mathrm{d}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho\right)_{t}=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
\theta & & & &  \tag{3.3}\\
-1 & \ddots & & & \\
0 & \ddots & \ddots & & \\
\vdots & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \\
0 & \ldots & 0 & -1 & \theta
\end{array}\right)
$$

and $\operatorname{diag}\left(\kappa_{i}\right)$ is the diagonal matrix with diagonal entries all equal to $\kappa_{i}$ for each $i$. We also let $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}:=\bar{k}(t) \otimes_{\bar{k}[t]} \mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ be the pre- $t$-motive associated to $\mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}_{\rho}$. By [32, §5], we have that for $\boldsymbol{z}=\left[z_{0}, \ldots, z_{n}\right]^{\top} \in \mathbb{K}^{n+1}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Exp}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}(\boldsymbol{z})=\left[\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(z_{0}\right), \ldots, \operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(z_{n}\right)\right]^{\top} \tag{3.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Set for $z \in \mathbb{K},(z)_{j}:=[0, \ldots, 0, z, 0, \ldots, 0]^{\top} \in \mathbb{K}^{n+1}$, where $z$ is in the $j$-th entry and all other entries are 0 . Thus, if $\left\{\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r}\right\}$ is an A-basis of $\Lambda_{\rho}$, then $\left\{\left(\lambda_{i}\right)_{j} \mid i=1, \ldots, r\right.$ and $1 \leq j \leq$ $n+1\}$ forms an A-basis of $\Lambda_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}$, the period lattice of $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$.

For Drinfeld A-modules $\rho$ and $\rho^{\prime}$ defined over $K \subseteq \mathbb{K}$, a morphism $b: \rho \rightarrow \rho^{\prime}$ is a twisted polynomial $b \in \mathbb{K}[\tau]$ such that

$$
b \rho_{a}=\rho_{a}^{\prime} b \quad \forall a \in \mathbf{A}
$$

We say that $b$ is defined over $L \subseteq \mathbb{K}$ if $b \in L[\tau]$. Let $b: \rho \rightarrow \rho^{\prime}$ be a morphism defined over $L \subseteq \bar{k}$. Then, $b$ induces a morphism $B: \mathcal{M}_{\rho} \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{\rho^{\prime}}$ of A-finite dual $t$-motives in the following way. If $b=\sum c_{i} \tau^{i} \in L[\tau]$, then recall from $\S 2.1$ that $b^{*}=\sum c_{i}^{(-i)} \sigma^{i}$. As in [11, Lem. 2.4.2], $B$ is the $\bar{k}[\sigma]$-linear map such that $B(1)=b^{*}$. The map

$$
\operatorname{End}(\rho) \rightarrow\left\{c \in \mathbb{K} \mid c \Lambda_{\rho} \subseteq \Lambda_{\rho}\right\}: \sum_{i} c_{i} \tau^{i} \mapsto c_{0}
$$

is an isomorphism. Throughout this dissertation, we identify $\operatorname{End}(\rho)$ with the image of this map and let $K_{\rho}$ denote its fraction field. The following result is due to Anderson.

Proposition 2 (See Chang-Papanikolas [12, Prop. 3.3.2, Cor. 3.3.3]). The functor $\rho \rightarrow \mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ from the category of Drinfeld A-modules defined over $K \subseteq \bar{k}$ to the category of A-finite dual t-motives is fully faithful. Moreover, for any Drinfeld A-module $\rho$ defined over $K \subseteq \bar{k}$,

$$
\operatorname{End}(\rho) \cong \operatorname{End}_{\bar{k}[t, \sigma]}\left(\mathcal{M}_{\rho}\right), \quad K_{\rho} \cong \operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(M_{\rho}\right)
$$

and $M_{\rho}$ is a simple left $\bar{k}(t)\left[\sigma, \sigma^{-1}\right]$-module.

### 3.2 Rigid analytic trivializations of Drinfeld modules, and prolongations

We continue with our choice of Drinfeld A-module $\rho$ of rank $r$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$. By constructing the rigid analytic trivialization $\Psi_{\rho}$, we show that its associated A-finite dual $t$-motive $\mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ is rigid analytically trivial, and then extend to the prolongation $t$-modules $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$. The details regarding Drinfeld modules can be found in [12, §3.4] and [32, §4.4] (see [32, Prop 4.4.11]). For $u \in \mathbb{K}$, we define the Anderson generating function

$$
\begin{equation*}
f_{u}(t):=\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(\frac{u}{\theta^{m+1}}\right) t^{m}=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha_{i} u^{q^{i}}}{\theta^{q^{i}}-t} \in \mathbb{T} \tag{3.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(z)=\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} \alpha_{i} z^{q^{i}}$ with $\alpha_{0}=1$. The last equality is due to Pellarin [35, §4]. Since $\rho_{t}\left(\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(u / \theta^{m+1}\right)\right)=\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(u / \theta^{m}\right)$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\kappa_{1} f_{u}^{(1)}(t)+\cdots+\kappa_{r-1} f_{u}^{(r-1)}(t)+\kappa_{r} f_{u}^{(r)}(t)=(t-\theta) f_{u}(t)+\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(u) \tag{3.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

and so

$$
\begin{equation*}
\kappa_{1} f_{u}^{(1)}(\theta)+\cdots+\kappa_{r-1} f_{u}^{(r-1)}(\theta)+\kappa_{r} f_{u}^{(r)}(\theta)=-u+\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(u) \tag{3.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $\left\{\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r}\right\}$ an A-basis of $\Lambda_{\rho}$, we set $f_{i}(t):=f_{\lambda_{i}}(t)$ for each $i$. Define the matrix

$$
\Upsilon=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
f_{1} & f_{1}^{(1)} & \ldots & f_{1}^{(r-1)}  \tag{3.8}\\
f_{2} & f_{2}^{(1)} & \ldots & f_{2}^{(r-1)} \\
\vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\
f_{r} & f_{r}^{(1)} & \ldots & f_{r}^{(r-1)}
\end{array}\right)
$$

For each $1 \leq i \leq r$ and $1 \leq j \leq r-1$, it follows from [20, p.194], [32, §4.4] and [38, §6.4] that the quasi-period $F_{\tau^{j}}\left(\lambda_{i}\right)$ of $\lambda_{i}$ associated to the biderivation $\delta_{j}: t \mapsto \tau^{j}$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
F_{\tau^{j}}\left(\lambda_{i}\right)=\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(\frac{\lambda_{i}}{\theta^{m+1}}\right)^{q^{j}} \theta^{m}=\left.f_{i}^{(j)}(t)\right|_{t=\theta} \tag{3.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover, by [12, Lem. 3.4.4] (see also [32, Lem. 4.3.9]), it follows that det $\Upsilon \neq 0$. As in [12, $\S 3.4]$, if we let

$$
V=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
\kappa_{1} & \kappa_{2}^{(-1)} & \ldots & \kappa_{r-1}^{(-r+2)} & \kappa_{r}^{(-r+1)} \\
\kappa_{2} & \kappa_{3}^{(-1)} & \ldots & \kappa_{r}^{(-r+2)} & \\
\vdots & \vdots & & & \\
\kappa_{r-1} & \kappa_{r}^{(-1)} & & & \\
\kappa_{r} & & & &
\end{array}\right)
$$

and set

$$
\begin{equation*}
\Psi_{\rho}:=V^{-1}\left[\Upsilon^{(1)}\right]^{-1} \tag{3.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

then $\Psi^{(-1)}=\Phi_{\rho} \Psi_{\rho}$. Thus, the pre-t-motive $M_{\rho}=\bar{k}(t) \otimes_{\bar{k}[t]} \mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ is rigid analytically trivial and is in $\mathcal{T}$, the category of $t$-motives.

By (2.5), the $n$-th prolongation $t$-motive $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}=\bar{k}(t) \otimes_{\bar{k}[t]} \mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ is rigid analytically trivial and $\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]$. Thus,

$$
\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}=d_{t, n+1}[V]^{-1} d_{t, n+1}\left[\Upsilon^{(1)}\right]^{-1}
$$

### 3.3 Hyperderivatives of periods and logarithms, and prolongations

For this section also, we continue with our choice of Drinfeld A-module $\rho$ of rank $r$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$. In [32], Papanikolas and the author studied extensively the periods, quasi-periods, logarithms and quasi-logarithms of prolongations of abelian and A-finite Anderson $t$-modules. For $\delta \in \operatorname{Der}(\phi)$ such that $\delta_{t}=\sum_{h=1}^{v} b_{h} \tau^{h} \in \mathbb{K}[\tau] \tau$, we set $\delta_{t}\left(f_{u}(t)\right)=\sum_{h=1}^{v} b_{h} f_{u}^{(h)}(t)$. The statement of the result from [32] for Drinfeld A-modules is as follows.

Theorem 7 (Namoijam-Papanikolas [32]). Fix $n \geq 0$. Let $\rho$ be a Drinfeld A-module defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$. If $\left\{\delta_{1}, \ldots, \delta_{r}\right\}$ is a basis of $\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{DR}}^{1}(\rho)$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$ and $\left\{\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r}\right\}$ is an $\mathbf{A}$-basis of the period lattice $\Lambda_{\rho}$, then we have

$$
\operatorname{Span}_{\bar{k}}\left(\bigcup_{s=0}^{n} \bigcup_{i=1}^{r} \bigcup_{j=1}^{r}\left\{\partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\delta_{i}}\left(\lambda_{j}\right)\right)\right\}\right)=\operatorname{Span}_{\bar{k}}\left(\left.d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]^{-1}\right|_{t=\theta}\right) .
$$

Moreover, if $u \in \mathbb{K}$ such that $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(u) \in k^{\text {sep }}$, then

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{Span}_{\bar{k}}\left(\left.\bigcup_{s=1}^{n} \bigcup_{i=1}^{r}\left\{\left(\delta_{i}\right)_{t}\left(f_{u}(t)\right), \partial_{t}^{s}\left(\left(\delta_{i}\right)_{t}\left(f_{u}(t)\right)\right)\right\}\right|_{t=\theta}\right)=\operatorname{Span}_{\bar{k}}\left(\bigcup_{s=0}^{n} \bigcup_{i=1}^{r}\left\{\partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\delta_{i}}(u)\right)\right\}\right) \tag{3.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, by Theorem 6, computing the dimension of the Galois group $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ for $n \geq 1$ will enable us to prove algebraic independence results concerning hyperderivatives of periods and quasi-periods of abelian and A-finite Anderson $t$-modules. Moreover, by (3.11), if we are able to create appropriate $t$-motives and determine the dimension of its associated Galois group, then we can prove algebraic independence results concerning hyperderivatives of logarithms and quasilogarithms of Abelian and A-finite Anderson $t$-modules.

## 4. HYPERDERIVATIVES OF PERIODS AND QUASI-PERIODS

In this chapter, we prove Theorem 2. To prove this theorem, we first show in Theorem 10 that $\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \geq(n+1) \cdot r^{2} / s$, and in Theorem 11 that $\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \leq(n+1) \cdot r^{2} / s$. Moreover, in Corollary 3 we explicitly compute $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ for all $n \geq 1$.

### 4.1 The $t$-adic Tate module, Anderson generation functions and prolongations

For parts of this section, we adapt the methods in [12, §3.4]. Let $\phi$ be a uniformizable, Afinite Anderson $t$-module of rank $r$. Then, for any $a \in \mathbf{A}$, the torsion A-module $\phi[a]:=\{\boldsymbol{x} \in$ $\left.\mathbb{K}^{d} \mid \phi_{a}(\boldsymbol{x})=0\right\}$ is isomorphic to $(\mathbf{A} /(a))^{\oplus r}$. We define the $t$-adic Tate module

$$
T_{t}(\phi):=\underset{m}{\underset{m}{\lim }} \phi\left[t^{m}\right] \cong \mathbf{A}_{t}^{\oplus r} .
$$

Now, we fix a Drinfeld A-module $\rho$ of rank $r$. If $\rho$ is defined over $K$ such that $k \subseteq K \subseteq \bar{k}$ and $[K: k]<\infty$, then every element of $\rho\left[t^{m}\right]$ is separable over $K$. Thus, the absolute Galois group $\operatorname{Gal}\left(K^{\text {sep }} / K\right)$ of the separable closure of $K$ inside $\bar{k}$ acts on $T_{t}(\rho)$, defining a representation

$$
\varphi_{t}: \operatorname{Gal}\left(K^{\mathrm{sep}} / K\right) \rightarrow \operatorname{Aut}\left(T_{t}(\rho)\right) \cong \operatorname{GL}_{r}\left(\mathbf{A}_{t}\right)
$$

We fix an A-basis $\left\{\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r}\right\}$ of $\Lambda_{\rho}$ and define

$$
\xi_{i, m}:=\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(\frac{\lambda_{i}}{\theta^{m+1}}\right) \in \rho\left[t^{m+1}\right]
$$

for $1 \leq i \leq r$ and $m \geq 0$. We define $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r}\right\}$ to be the $\mathbf{A}_{t}$-basis of $T_{t}(\rho)$, where we set $x_{i}:=\left(\xi_{i, 0}, \xi_{i, 1}, \xi_{i, 2}, \ldots\right)$. Then, for $\epsilon \in \operatorname{Gal}\left(K^{\text {sep }} / K\right)$, there exists $g_{\epsilon} \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q} \llbracket t \rrbracket\right)$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\varphi_{t}(\epsilon) \mathbf{x}=g_{\epsilon} \mathbf{x} \tag{4.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{x}=\left[x_{1}, \ldots, x_{r}\right]^{\top}$.

For the remainder of this section, we fix $n \geq 0$. Recall from $\S 3.1$ that for $z \in \mathbb{K},(z)_{j}=$ $[0, \ldots, 0, z, 0, \ldots, 0]^{\top} \in \mathbb{K}^{n+1}$, and $\left\{\left(\lambda_{i}\right)_{j} \mid i=1, \ldots, r\right.$ and $\left.1 \leq j \leq n+1\right\}$ is an A-basis of $\Lambda_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}$. We define

$$
\chi_{i, j, m}:=\operatorname{Exp}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}\left(\left(\mathrm{~d}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho\right)_{t}\right)^{-(m+1)}\left(\lambda_{i}\right)_{j}\right)
$$

Similar to the case of the Drinfeld A-module $\rho$, we define $\left\{y_{i, j} \mid 1 \leq i \leq r, 1 \leq j \leq n+1\right\}$ to be the $\mathbf{A}_{t}$-basis of $T_{t}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho\right)$, where for each $i, j$, we set $y_{i, j}:=\left(\chi_{i, j, 0}, \chi_{i, j, 1}, \chi_{i, j, 2}, \ldots\right)$.

For each $i=1, \ldots, r$, by (3.5) the Anderson generating function of $\rho$ with respect to $\lambda_{i}$ is

$$
f_{i}(t)=\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(\frac{\lambda_{i}}{\theta^{m+1}}\right) t^{m}=\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \xi_{i, m} t^{m} \in K^{\mathrm{sep}} \llbracket t \rrbracket
$$

The Galois group $\operatorname{Gal}\left(K^{\text {sep }} / K\right)$ acts on $K^{\text {sep }} \llbracket t \rrbracket$ by acting on each coefficient. The following lemma shows that the induced Galois action on $f_{i}(t)$ and its Frobenius twists as elements of $K^{\text {sep }} \llbracket t \rrbracket$ are compatible with its action on them as elements of $T_{t}(\rho)$. Set $\mathbf{f}=\left[f_{1}, \ldots, f_{r}\right]^{\top}$.

Lemma 1 (Chang, Papanikolas [12, Lem. 3.3.2, Cor. 3.2.4]). For any $\epsilon \in \operatorname{Gal}\left(K^{\mathrm{sep}} / K\right)$, we have $\epsilon(\mathbf{f})=g_{\epsilon} \mathbf{f}$, where $\epsilon(\mathbf{f})=\left[\epsilon\left(f_{1}\right), \ldots, \epsilon\left(f_{r}\right)\right]^{\top}$. Moreover, for $1 \leq j \leq r-1$, we have $\epsilon\left(\mathbf{f}^{(j)}\right)=g_{\epsilon} \mathbf{f}^{(j)}$.

We want to extend Anderson generating functions to Anderson generating functions of the prolongation $t$-module $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$. Anderson generating functions of general Anderson $t$-modules have been extensively studied in [21], [27], [32]. For each $i=1, \ldots, r$ and $j=1, \ldots, n+1$, we define the Anderson generating function of $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ with respect to $\left(\lambda_{i}\right)_{j}$ to be

$$
\mathcal{G}_{i, j}(t):=\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \operatorname{Exp}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}\left(\left(\mathrm{~d}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho\right)_{t}\right)^{-(m+1)}\left(\lambda_{i}\right)_{j}\right) t^{m}=\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \chi_{i, j, m} t^{m} \in K^{\text {sep }} \llbracket t \rrbracket^{n+1}
$$

Observe that in (3.3), the subdiagonal entries of $\mathrm{d}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho\right)_{t}$ are $-\partial_{\theta}^{1}(\theta)$. Also, $0=(-1)^{c} \partial_{\theta}^{c}(\theta)$ for
$c \geq 2$ and so by the product rule of hyperderivatives, for $h \in \mathbb{Z}$ we have

$$
\left(\mathrm{d}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho\right)_{t}\right)^{h}=\left(\begin{array}{cccccc}
\theta^{h} & & & & & \\
-\partial_{\theta}^{1}\left(\theta^{h}\right) & \theta^{h} & & & & \\
\partial_{\theta}^{2}\left(\theta^{h}\right) & -\partial_{\theta}^{1}\left(\theta^{h}\right) & \theta^{h} & & & \\
\vdots & & \ddots & \ddots & & \\
\vdots & & & \ddots & \ddots & \\
(-1)^{n} \partial_{\theta}^{n}\left(\theta^{h}\right) & \ldots & \ldots & \partial_{\theta}^{2}\left(\theta^{h}\right) & -\partial_{\theta}^{1}\left(\theta^{h}\right) & \theta^{h}
\end{array}\right) .
$$

From this it follows that for $m \geq 0$

$$
\left(\mathrm{d}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho\right)_{t}\right)^{-(m+1)}\left(\lambda_{i}\right)_{j}=\sum_{c=0}^{n+1-j}\left((-1)^{c} \partial_{\theta}^{c}\left(\theta^{-(m+1)}\right) \lambda_{i}\right)_{j+c}
$$

and since $(-1)^{c} \partial_{\theta}^{c}\left(\theta^{-(m+1)}\right)=\binom{m+c}{c} \theta^{-(m+1+c)}$ for $c \geq 1$, using (3.4), we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\chi_{i, j, m}=\sum_{c=0}^{n+1-j}\binom{m+c}{c}\left(\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(\frac{\lambda_{i}}{\theta^{m+1+c}}\right)\right)_{j+c}=\sum_{c=0}^{n+1-j}\binom{m+c}{c}\left(\xi_{i, m+c}\right)_{j+c} \tag{4.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\mathcal{G}_{i, j}(t)=\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} \sum_{c=0}^{n+1-j}\binom{m+c}{c}\left(\xi_{i, m+c}\right)_{j+c} t^{m}=\sum_{c=0}^{n+1-j}\left(\sum_{m=c}^{\infty}\binom{m}{c} \xi_{i, m} t^{m-c}\right)_{j+c} .
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathcal{G}_{i, j}(t)=\sum_{c=0}^{n+1-j}\left(\partial_{t}^{c}\left(f_{i}\right)\right)_{j+c} . \tag{4.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Similar to the case of Drinfeld modules (see Lemma 1), the following lemma and corollary show that the induced Galois action on $\mathcal{G}_{i, j}(t)$ and its Frobenius twists as elements of $K^{\text {sep }} \llbracket t \rrbracket^{n+1}$ are compatible with its action on them as elements of $T_{t}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho\right)$. Set

$$
\mathbf{y}:=\left[y_{1,1}, \ldots, y_{r, 1}, \ldots, \ldots, y_{1, n+1}, \ldots, y_{r, n+1}\right]^{\top} \in\left(T_{t}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho\right)\right)^{r(n+1)} .
$$

Lemma 2. For each $\epsilon \in \operatorname{Gal}\left(K^{\mathrm{sep}} / K\right)$, let $g_{\epsilon} \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q} \llbracket t \rrbracket\right)$ be defined as in (4.1). Let $\mathcal{G}:=$ $\left[\mathcal{G}_{1,1}, \ldots, \mathcal{G}_{r, 1}, \ldots, \ldots, \mathcal{G}_{1, n+1}, \ldots, \mathcal{G}_{r, n+1}\right]^{\top} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r(n+1) \times 1}\left(K^{\text {sep }} \llbracket t \rrbracket^{n+1}\right)$. Then,
(a)

$$
\epsilon(\mathbf{y})=d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right](\mathbf{y}),
$$

(b)

$$
\epsilon(\mathcal{G})=d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right] \mathcal{G},
$$

$$
\text { where } \epsilon(\mathcal{G})=\left[\epsilon\left(\mathcal{G}_{1,1}\right), \ldots, \epsilon\left(\mathcal{G}_{r, 1}\right), \ldots, \ldots, \epsilon\left(\mathcal{G}_{1, n+1}\right), \ldots, \epsilon\left(\mathcal{G}_{r, n+1}\right)\right]^{\top}
$$

Remark 1. For the case of the prolongations of the Carlitz module, this was proved by Maurischat (see [29]).

Proof of Lemma 2. For parts of the proof, we apply methods similar to the ones used in the proof of [12, Lem. 3.2.2]. For $\mathbf{a}=\sum_{\ell=0}^{\infty} a_{\ell} t^{\ell} \in \mathbb{F}_{q} \llbracket t \rrbracket$, it is easy to see that for each $i, j$, we have $\mathbf{a} \cdot y_{i, j}:=\left(\mathbf{a} \cdot \chi_{i, j, 0}, \mathbf{a} \cdot \chi_{i, j, 1}, \mathbf{a} \cdot \chi_{i, j, 2}, \ldots\right)$, where for each $m \geq 0$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{a} \cdot \chi_{i, j, m}=a_{m} \chi_{i, j, 0}+a_{m-1} \chi_{i, j, 1}+\cdots+a_{0} \chi_{i, j, m} \in\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho\right)\left[t^{m+1}\right] \tag{4.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

and

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{a} \cdot \xi_{i, m}=a_{m} \xi_{i, 0}+a_{m-1} \xi_{i, 1}+\cdots+a_{0} \xi_{i, m} \in \rho\left[t^{m+1}\right] . \tag{4.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

For $1 \leq u \leq r$, let $\boldsymbol{h}:=\left[h_{u, 1}, \ldots, h_{u, r}\right] \in \operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times r}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q} \llbracket t \rrbracket\right)$ be the $u$-th row of $g_{\epsilon}$ and let $h_{u, i}=$ $\sum_{\ell=0}^{\infty} \gamma_{i, \ell} t^{\ell}$ as an element of $\mathbb{F}_{q} \llbracket t \rrbracket$. Then, for each $c \geq 0$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{t}^{c}\left(h_{u, i}\right)=\sum_{\ell=0}^{\infty}\binom{\ell}{c} \gamma_{i, \ell} t^{\ell-c} \tag{4.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Define $\partial_{t}^{c}(\boldsymbol{h}):=\left[\partial_{t}^{c}\left(h_{u, 1}\right), \ldots, \partial_{t}^{c}\left(h_{u, r}\right)\right]$. By definition, $d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right]$ is a block upper triangular $r(n+1) \times r(n+1)$ matrix with $(n+1)^{2}$ blocks of size $r \times r$. Therefore, for $0 \leq v \leq n$ the $(v r+u)$-th row of $d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right]$ is $\left[\mathbf{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{0}, \boldsymbol{h}, \partial_{t}^{1}(\boldsymbol{h}), \ldots, \partial_{t}^{n+1-v}(\boldsymbol{h})\right] \in \operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times n(r+1)}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q} \llbracket t \rrbracket\right)$. Thus,
the $(v r+u)$-th entry of $d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right](\mathbf{y})$ is $\sum_{c=0}^{n+1-v} \sum_{i=1}^{r} \partial_{t}^{c}\left(h_{u, i}\right) \cdot y_{i, v+c}$ and we see that its $(m+1)$-th entry is the following:

$$
\begin{aligned}
\sum_{c=0}^{n+1-v} \sum_{i=1}^{r} \partial_{t}^{c}\left(h_{u, i}\right) \cdot \chi_{i, v, m} & =\sum_{c=0}^{n+1-v} \sum_{i=1}^{r} \sum_{w=0}^{m+c}\binom{w}{c} \gamma_{i, w} \chi_{i, v+c, m+c-w} \\
& =\sum_{c=0}^{n+1-v} \sum_{i=1}^{r} \sum_{w=0}^{m+c} \sum_{k=0}^{n-(v+c)}\binom{w}{c}\binom{m+c-w+k}{k} \gamma_{i, w}\left(\xi_{i, m+c-w+k}\right)_{v+c+k}
\end{aligned}
$$

where we obtain the first equality by using (4.5) and (4.6), and the second equality by using (4.2). Setting $\alpha:=c+k$ and changing the order of summations (we also use the fact that for $j>m$, we have $\binom{m}{j}=0$ ), we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{c=0}^{n+1-v} \sum_{i=1}^{r} \partial_{t}^{c}\left(h_{u, i}\right) \cdot \chi_{i, v, m}=\sum_{\alpha=0}^{n+1-v} \sum_{i=1}^{r} \sum_{w=0}^{m+\alpha} \sum_{k=0}^{\alpha}\binom{w}{\alpha-k}\binom{m+\alpha-w}{k} \gamma_{i, w}\left(\xi_{i, m+\alpha-w}\right)_{v+\alpha} \tag{4.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

We now consider the calculation of $\epsilon(\mathbf{y})$. For $1 \leq u \leq r$ and $0 \leq v \leq n$, the $(v r+u)$-th entry of $\epsilon(\mathbf{y})$ is $\epsilon\left(y_{u, v}\right)$. By using (4.2), the ( $m+1$ )-th entry of $\epsilon\left(y_{u, v}\right)$ for $m \geq 0$ is

$$
\epsilon\left(\chi_{u, v, m}\right)=\sum_{\alpha=0}^{n+1-v}\binom{m+\alpha}{\alpha}\left(\epsilon\left(\xi_{u, m+\alpha}\right)\right)_{v+\alpha}
$$

Since $\boldsymbol{h}$ is the $u$-th row of $g_{\epsilon}$, we see from (4.1) and (4.5) that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\epsilon\left(\chi_{u, v, m}\right)=\sum_{\alpha=0}^{n+1-v} \sum_{i=1}^{r} \sum_{w=0}^{m+\alpha}\binom{m+\alpha}{\alpha}\left(\gamma_{i, w} \xi_{i, m+\alpha-w}\right)_{v+\alpha} \tag{4.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

Using Chu-Vandermonde summation $\sum_{k=0}^{\alpha}\binom{w}{\alpha-k}\binom{m+\alpha-w}{k}=\binom{m+\alpha}{\alpha}$, it follows that the right hand sides of (4.7) and (4.8) are the same and thus, we have that $\epsilon\left(y_{u, v}\right)=\sum_{c=0}^{n+1-v} \sum_{i=1}^{r} \partial_{t}^{h}\left(h_{u, i}\right) \cdot y_{i . v}$. This proves part (a).

For part (b), we have from Lemma 1 that

$$
\epsilon\left(f_{u}(t)\right)=\left[h_{u, 1}, \ldots, h_{u, r}\right] \mathbf{f}
$$

Since $\epsilon$ commutes with taking hyperderivatives with respect to $t$, for $c \leq n$ we have

$$
\epsilon\left(\partial_{t}^{c}\left(f_{u}\right)\right)=\partial_{t}^{c}\left(\left[h_{u, 1}, \ldots, h_{u, r}\right] \mathbf{f}\right),
$$

and so by (4.3) we obtain $\epsilon\left(\mathcal{G}_{u, v}\right)=\sum_{c=0}^{n+1-v}\left(\partial_{t}^{c}\left(\left[h_{u, 1}, \ldots, h_{u, r}\right] \mathbf{f}\right)\right)_{v+c}$. Therefore, by part (a), it follows that via multiplication of power series in $K^{\text {sep }} \llbracket t \rrbracket^{n+1}, \epsilon\left(\mathcal{G}_{u, v}\right)$ is the same as the $(v r+u)$-th entry of $d_{t, n}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right] \mathcal{G}$.

Corollary 2. For $1 \leq i, j \leq r$, define $\Upsilon \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r}\left(K^{\text {sep }} \llbracket t \rrbracket\right)$ so that $\Upsilon_{i j}:=f_{i}^{(j-1)}(t)$ as in (3.8). Then, for any $\epsilon \in \operatorname{Gal}\left(K^{\text {sep }} / K\right)$ and $g_{\epsilon} \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q} \llbracket t \rrbracket\right)$ as in (4.1), we have

$$
\epsilon\left(d_{t, n+1}[\Upsilon]^{(1)}\right)=d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right] d_{t, n+1}[\Upsilon]^{(1)} .
$$

Proof. Since the $j$-th column of $\Upsilon^{(1)}$ is $\mathbf{f}^{(j)}$, by Lemma 1 we have that $\epsilon\left(\Upsilon^{(1)}\right)=g_{\epsilon} \Upsilon^{(1)}$. Since for each $i, j$ and $0 \leq c \leq n$, we have $\left.\epsilon\left(\partial_{t}^{c}\left(f_{i}^{(j)}\right)\right)\right)=\partial_{t}^{c}\left(\epsilon\left(f_{i}\right)^{(j)}\right)$, it follows from Lemma 2 that

$$
\epsilon\left(d_{t, n+1}\left[\Upsilon^{(1)}\right]\right)=d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon} \Upsilon^{(1)}\right]=d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right] d_{t, n+1}\left[\Upsilon^{(1)}\right]=d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right] d_{t, n+1}[\Upsilon]^{(1)} .
$$

The last equality follows from the observation that $\partial_{t}^{c}(\cdot)$ commutes with twisting.
We now consider the $t$-motivic Galois group $\Gamma_{\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}}$ and its principal homogeneous space $Z_{\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}}$ as in $\S 2.3$.

Theorem 8. Let $\rho$ be a Drinfeld A-module defined over $K$ such that $k \subseteq K \subseteq \bar{k}$ and $[K: k]<\infty$, and let $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ be its $n$-th prolongation $t$-module. Suppose that $\operatorname{End}(\rho) \subseteq K[\tau]$ and $Z_{\Psi_{\rho}}$ is defined over $K(t)$. Then, the assignment $\epsilon \mapsto d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right]$ induces a group homomorphism

$$
\beta_{n}: \operatorname{Gal}\left(K^{\mathrm{sep}} / K\right) \rightarrow \Gamma_{\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\right) .
$$

Proof. The proof uses the ideas of the proof of [12, Thm. 3.5.1]. Since $\varphi_{t}$ is a group homomorphism and $d_{t, n+1}[\cdot]$ respects multiplication, it suffices to show that $d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right]$ is in $\Gamma_{\Psi_{P_{n} \rho}}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\right)$.

Let $\epsilon \in \operatorname{Gal}\left(K^{\mathrm{sep}} / K\right)$, and let $g_{\epsilon} \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q} \llbracket t \rrbracket\right)$ be defined as in (4.1). By (2.5) and (3.10), the rigid analytic trivialization of $\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}$ is $\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]$. Since $\operatorname{Gal}\left(K^{\text {sep }} / K\right)=\operatorname{Aut}(\bar{K} / K)$ and entries of $V$ are purely inseparable over $K$, we see that $\epsilon(V)=V$. By Corollary 2,

$$
\begin{equation*}
\epsilon\left(d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]\right)=d_{t, n+1}\left[\epsilon\left(V^{-1}\left(\Upsilon^{(1)}\right)^{-1}\right)\right]=d_{t, n+1}\left[V^{-1}\left(g_{\epsilon} \Upsilon^{(1)}\right)^{-1}\right]=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right] d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}^{-1}\right] . \tag{4.9}
\end{equation*}
$$

Let $S \subseteq K(t)[X, 1 / \operatorname{det} X]$ denote a finite set of generators of the defining ideal of $Z_{\Psi_{P_{n} \rho}}$. Then, for any $h \in S$, we have $h\left(d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]\right)=0$. Since $\epsilon$ fixes the coefficients of $h$, we have

$$
0=\epsilon\left(h\left(d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]\right)\right)=h\left(d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right] d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}^{-1}\right]\right)
$$

Therefore, $d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right] d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}^{-1}\right] \in Z_{\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}}(\mathbb{K}((t)))$. By Theorem 5, we see that $d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}^{-1}\right]=$ $d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right]^{-1} \in \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\right)$.

### 4.2 Elements of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$

We continue with a Drinfeld A-module $\rho$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$ and the $t$-motive $M_{\rho}$ associated to $\rho$ (see §3.1). In this section, for $n \geq 1$ we determine what the elements of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$, the Galois group associated to the $n$-th prolongation $t$-motive $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$, look like. We let $\operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$ denote the ring of endomorphisms of $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$ and set $\mathbf{K}_{\rho}:=\operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(M_{\rho}\right)$. Recall from (2.3) that if $\boldsymbol{m} \in$ $\operatorname{Mat}_{r \times 1}\left(M_{\rho}\right)$ is a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis of $M_{\rho}$, then $\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}$ is a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis of $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$. Given $h \in \operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$, let $\mathrm{H} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r(n+1)}(\bar{k}(t))$ be such that $h\left(\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}\right)=\mathrm{H} \boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}$. Since $h \sigma=\sigma h$ and $\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Phi_{\rho}\right]$, we have

$$
d_{t, n+1}\left[\Phi_{\rho}\right] \mathrm{H}=\mathrm{H}^{(-1)} d_{t, n+1}\left[\Phi_{\rho}\right] .
$$

From this, we see that $\sigma$ fixes $d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]^{-1} \mathrm{H} d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]$, and therefore $d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]^{-1} \mathrm{H} d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right] \in$ $\operatorname{Mat}_{r(n+1)}(\mathbf{k})$. We have thus defined the following injective map:

$$
\operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right) \rightarrow \operatorname{End}\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}\right)=\operatorname{Mat}_{r(n+1)}(\mathbf{k})
$$

$$
\begin{equation*}
h \mapsto h^{B}:=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]^{-1} \mathrm{H} d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right] . \tag{4.10}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since the tautological representation $\varpi_{n}: \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \rightarrow \mathrm{GL}\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}\right)$ is functorial in $\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}$ (see [34, §3.5.2]), for any $\mathbf{k}$-algebra R and $\mu \in \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$, it follows that we have the following commutative diagram:

$$
\begin{align*}
& \mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B} \xrightarrow{\varpi_{n}(\mu)} \mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B} \\
& \downarrow 1 \otimes h^{B} \quad \downarrow 1 \otimes h^{B}  \tag{4.11}\\
& \mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B} \xrightarrow{\varpi_{n}(\mu)} \mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B} .
\end{align*}
$$

Proposition 3. Given $f \in \mathbf{K}_{\rho}$, let $\mathrm{F} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r}(\bar{k}(t))$ satisfy $f(\boldsymbol{m})=\mathrm{Fm}$. Also, for $n \geq 1$ let $h \in \operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$ be such that $h\left(\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}\right)=\mathrm{H} \boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}$, where $\mathrm{H}=\left(\mathrm{H}_{i j}\right) \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r(n+1)}(\bar{k}(t))$ and each $\mathrm{H}_{i j}$ is an $r \times r$ block for $1 \leq i, j \leq n+1$.
(a) If $K_{\rho}$ is separable over $k$, then for $n \geq 1$ there exists $g \in \operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$ such that $g\left(\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}\right)=$ $d_{t, n+1}[\mathrm{~F}] \boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}$.
(b) For $0 \leq j \leq n-1$, the matrix $\mathrm{H}_{j}:=\left(\mathrm{H}_{u v}\right) \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r(j+1)}(\bar{k}(t)), j+1 \leq u \leq n+1,1 \leq$ $v \leq j+1$ formed by the lower left $r(j+1) \times r(j+1)$ square of H represents an element of $\operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho}\right)$.

Proof. For part (a), since $\mathbf{K}_{\rho}$ is separable over $\mathbf{k}$ (by hypothesis and Lemma 2), we can take hyperderivatives of entries of F . Since $f \sigma=\sigma f$, we have $\Phi_{\rho} \mathrm{F}=\mathrm{F}^{(-1)} \Phi_{\rho}$. Since multiplication by $\sigma$ on $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$ is represented by $\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Phi_{\rho}\right]$, the proof of (a) follows from the observation that

$$
d_{t, n+1}\left[\Phi_{\rho}\right] d_{t, n+1}[\mathrm{~F}]=d_{t, n+1}[\mathrm{~F}]^{(-1)} d_{t, n+1}\left[\Phi_{\rho}\right] .
$$

For part (b), using $d_{t, n+1}\left[\Phi_{\rho}\right] \mathrm{H}=\mathrm{H}^{(-1)} d_{t, n+1}\left[\Phi_{\rho}\right]$ and the definition of $d$-matrices, we see that for $0 \leq j \leq n-1$,

$$
d_{t, j+1}\left[\Phi_{\rho}\right] \mathrm{H}_{j}=\mathrm{H}_{j}^{(-1)} d_{t, j+1}\left[\Phi_{\rho}\right]
$$

and the result follows.

Theorem 9. For each $n \geq 1$ and any $\mathbf{k}$-algebra R , an element of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ is of the form

$$
\left(\begin{array}{cccccc}
\mathrm{A}_{0} & \mathrm{~A}_{1} & \mathrm{~A}_{2} & \ldots & \mathrm{~A}_{n-1} & \mathrm{~A}_{n} \\
& \mathrm{~A}_{0} & \mathrm{~A}_{1} & \ddots & \ddots & \mathrm{~A}_{n-1} \\
& & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & & \ddots & \ddots & \mathrm{~A}_{2} \\
& & & & \ddots & \mathrm{~A}_{1} \\
& & & & & \mathrm{~A}_{0}
\end{array}\right)
$$

where for each $0 \leq i \leq n, \mathrm{~A}_{i}$ is an $r \times r$ block. Furthermore, for $0 \leq j \leq n-1$, the matrix formed by the upper left $r(j+1) \times r(j+1)$ square is an element of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$. In particular, the matrix $\left(\mathrm{A}_{0}\right) \in \Gamma_{M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$.

Proof. Since the prolongation of an A-finite dual $t$-motive is also an A-finite dual $t$-motive, by (2.2), for any $n \geq 1$ and $0 \leq j \leq n-1$ we obtain a short exact sequence of $t$-motives

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \rightarrow \mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho} \xrightarrow{\iota} \mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho} \xrightarrow{\mathrm{pr}} \mathrm{P}_{n-j-1} M_{\rho} \rightarrow 0, \tag{4.12}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\operatorname{pr}\left(D_{i} m\right):=D_{i-j-1} m$ for $i>j$ and $\operatorname{pr}\left(D_{i} m\right):=0$ for $i \leq j$ and $m \in M_{\rho}$ and $\iota$ is the inclusion map. Note that $\mathrm{P}_{0} M_{\rho} \cong M_{\rho}$ via $D_{0} m \mapsto m$ for all $m \in M_{\rho}$.

For any $\mathbf{k}$-algebra R , we recall the action of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ on $\mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}$ from [34, §4.5]. Recall that $\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]$. The entries of $\boldsymbol{u}_{n}:=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]^{-1} \boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}$ form a k-basis of $\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}$ (see [34, Prop. 3.3.9]) and similarly for $0 \leq j \leq n-1$, we have that the entries of $\boldsymbol{u}_{j}:=$ $d_{t, j+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]^{-1} \boldsymbol{D}_{j} \boldsymbol{m}$ form a k-basis of $\left(\mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}$. For any $\mu \in \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ and any $a_{h} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times r}(\mathrm{R})$, $0 \leq h \leq n$, the action of $\mu$ on $\left(a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) \cdot \boldsymbol{u}_{n} \in \mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) \cdot d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]^{-1} \boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m} \mapsto\left(a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}\right) \cdot \mu^{-1} d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]^{-1} \boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m} \tag{4.13}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note that $d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]^{-1} \boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}=\boldsymbol{D}_{n}\left(\Psi_{\rho}^{-1} \boldsymbol{m}\right)$.

We first restrict the action of $\mu$ to $\mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}$ via the map $\iota$ in (4.12). So, we take $a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n-j-1}=0$ and set $\mu^{-1}:=\left(\mathrm{B}_{i w}\right), 1 \leq i, w \leq n+1$ where each $\mathrm{B}_{i w}$ is an $r \times r$ block. By $\iota$ in (4.12), we see that $\mu$ leaves $\left(\mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}$ invariant and thus the blocks

$$
\mathrm{B}_{n-j+v, 1}=\mathrm{B}_{n-j+v, 2}=\cdots=\mathrm{B}_{n-j+v, n-j}=\mathbf{0}, \quad \text { for } v=1, \ldots, j+1 .
$$

Moreover, since the non-zero $a_{h}$ 's were chosen arbitrarily, we see that the matrix formed by the lower right $r(j+1) \times r(j+1)$ square is an element of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$. Varying $j$ from 0 to $n-1$, we see that $\mu^{-1}$ is a block upper triangular matrix and that the matrices formed by the lower right $r(j+1) \times r(j+1)$ square is an element of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ for each $j \in\{0, \ldots, n-1\}$.

We return to arbitrary $a_{h} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times r}(\mathrm{R})$. We restrict the action of $\mu$ to $\mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n-j-1} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}$ via the map pr in (4.12). Through pr, we see that $\mu$ leaves $\left(\mathrm{P}_{n-j-1} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}$ invariant and so the matrix formed by the upper left $r(n-j) \times r(n-j)$ square of $\mu$ is an element of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n-j-1} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$. Varying $j$ from 0 to $n-1$, we see that the matrices formed by the upper left $r(j+1) \times r(j+1)$ square of $\mu$ is an element of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ for each $j \in\{0, \ldots, n-1\}$.

Now, we let $h \in \operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$ be such that for $\mathrm{H} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r(n+1)}(\bar{k}(t))$ we have $h\left(\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}\right)=$ $\mathrm{H} \boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}$. Let $\mathrm{H}:=\left(\mathrm{H}_{i w}\right)$, where each $\left(\mathrm{H}_{i w}\right)$ is an $r \times r$ block. For $0 \leq j \leq n-1$, let $\mathrm{H}_{j}:=$ $\left(\mathrm{H}_{u v}\right) \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r(j+1)}(\bar{k}(t)), j+1 \leq u \leq n+1,1 \leq v \leq j+1$ be the matrix formed by the lower left $r(j+1) \times r(j+1)$ square of $H$. Using the definition of $d$-matrices, we see that the matrix formed by the lower left $r(j+1) \times r(j+1)$ square of $d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]^{-1} \mathrm{H} d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]$ is $d_{t, j+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]^{-1} \mathrm{H}_{j} d_{t, j+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]$. By Proposition 3 (b), we have that $d_{t, j+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]^{-1} \mathrm{H}_{j} d_{t, j+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]$ is an element in the image of the natural embedding (4.10) for the $j$-th prolongation. Thus, by using the commutative diagram (4.11) for the $n$-th and the $(n-1)$-th prolongations, we see that since $\mu$ is upper triangular, the matrices formed by the lower right $r n \times r n$ square and the upper left $r n \times r n$ square of $\mu$ are equal. Now, comparing each $r \times r$ block in this equality, we get the required result.

### 4.3 Lower bound on Dimension of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$

For this section, the reader is directed to Appendix A for details about differential algebra and differential algebraic geometry in characteristic $p>0$. By the properties of hyperderivatives (see $\S 2.4)$, for a field $F$ of characteristic $p>0$ with $t$ transcendental over $F$, we see that $\left(F(t), \partial_{t}\right)$, $\left(F((t)), \partial_{t}\right)$ and $\left(F(t)^{\text {sep }}, \partial_{t}\right)$, where $\partial_{t}$ represents hyperderivative with respect to $t$, are $\partial_{t}$-fields. By Theorem 9, we make the choice to let the coordinates of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ be

$$
\mathbf{X}:=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathbf{X}_{0} & \mathbf{X}_{1} & \ldots & \ldots & \mathbf{X}_{n}  \tag{4.14}\\
& \mathbf{X}_{0} & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & \mathbf{X}_{0} & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & & \ddots & \mathbf{X}_{1} \\
& & & & \mathbf{X}_{0}
\end{array}\right)
$$

where $\mathbf{X}_{h}:=\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{i j}\right)$, an $r \times r$ matrix for $h=0,1, \ldots, n$. We set $\partial_{t}^{j}\left(\mathbf{X}_{h}\right):=\left(\partial_{t}^{j}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{i, j}\right)\right)$ and

$$
\operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{h}\right):=\left[\left(X_{h}\right)_{1,1}, \ldots,\left(X_{h}\right)_{r, 1},\left(X_{h}\right)_{1,2}, \ldots,\left(X_{h}\right)_{r, 2}, \ldots, \ldots,\left(X_{h}\right)_{1, r}, \ldots,\left(X_{h}\right)_{r, r}\right]^{\top}
$$

which consists of all entries of $\mathbf{X}_{h}$ lined up in a column vector.
Let $0 \leq i \leq n$. Define $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left\{\mathbf{X}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{i}\right\}$ to be the $\partial_{t}$-polynomial ring, as in Appendix A.2, over $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))$ with entries of each $\mathbf{X}_{h}$ for $h=0, \ldots, i$ as $\partial_{t^{-}}$-indeterminates. Also, define the $\partial_{t^{-}}$ polynomial ring $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left\{\mathbf{X}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{i}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right\}$ with $\partial_{t}$-indeterminates comprising of $1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}$ and entries of each $\mathbf{X}_{h}$ for $h=0, \ldots, i$. Moreover, define $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left[\mathbf{X}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{i}\right]$ to be the polynomial ring over $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))$ with entries of each $\mathbf{X}_{h}$ for $h=0, \ldots, i$ as indeterminates, and define $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left[\mathbf{X}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{i}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right]$ to be the polynomial ring with $1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}$ and entries of each $\mathbf{X}_{h}$ for $h=0, \ldots, i$ as indeterminates.

Theorem 10. Fix $n \geq 1$. Let $\rho$ be a Drinfeld $\mathbf{A}$-module of rank $r$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$ and $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ be its
associated $n$-th prolongation $t$-module. Suppose that $\left[K_{\rho}: k\right]=s$. Then,

$$
\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \geq(n+1) \frac{r^{2}}{s}
$$

Proof. From Theorem 8, we see that the Zariski closure $\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}{ }^{Z}$ of $\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}$ is an algebraic subgroup of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} / \mathbb{F}_{q}((t))$. Therefore, our task is to prove that ${\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}^{Z}$ is defined over $\mathbf{k}$ and that $\operatorname{dim}\left({\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}^{Z} / \mathbf{k}\right)=(n+1) r^{2} / s$. For any $\mathbf{k}$-algebra R, we define the algebraic group over $\mathbf{k}$,

$$
\operatorname{Cent}_{\mathrm{GL}_{r} / \mathbf{k}}\left(\mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)(\mathrm{R}):=\left\{\gamma \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}(\mathrm{R}) \mid \gamma g=g \gamma \text { for all } g \in \mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}} \mathbf{K}_{\rho} \subseteq \operatorname{Mat}_{r}(\mathrm{R})\right\} .
$$

By [36, Thm. 0.2] and [12, Thm. 3.5.4], we see that $\Gamma_{M_{\rho}}=\operatorname{Cent}_{\mathrm{GL}_{r} / \mathbf{k}}\left(\mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)={\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{0}}}^{Z}$ with dimension $r^{2} / s$. Since the defining polynomials of $\operatorname{Cent}_{\operatorname{Mat}_{r}(\mathbf{k})}\left(\mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)=\operatorname{Lie} \Gamma_{M_{\rho}}$ are homogeneous degree one polynomials, let its defining equations be as follows:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{i=1}^{r} \sum_{j=1}^{r}\left(b_{u}\right)_{i j}\left(X_{0}\right)_{i j}=0, \quad\left(b_{u}\right)_{i j} \in \mathbf{k}, u=1, \ldots, r^{2}-r^{2} / s \tag{4.15}
\end{equation*}
$$

which can be written as

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{B} \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)=\mathbf{0} \tag{4.16}
\end{equation*}
$$

where we set $\mathbf{B}$ to be the $\left(r^{2}-r^{2} / s\right) \times r^{2}$ matrix with $\left(b_{u}\right)_{i j}$ as the $u \times((j-1) r+i)$-th entry. We see that $\operatorname{rank} \mathbf{B}=r^{2}-\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{M_{\rho}}=r^{2}-r^{2} / s$. Therefore, the defining ideal of $\Gamma_{M_{\rho}}$ is the ideal generated by the entries of $\mathbf{B} \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)$ in $\mathbf{k}\left[\mathbf{X}_{0}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right]$, the coordinate ring of $\mathrm{GL}_{r} / \mathbf{k}$.
 of $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))$ inside the algebraic closure $\overline{\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))}$ (see Appendix A.2). Then

$$
\mathfrak{I}\left(\operatorname{Im} \beta_{0}\right)=\mathfrak{I}\left({\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{0}}}^{2}\right)=\mathfrak{D}\left(\mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{v e c}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)\right),
$$

where $\mathfrak{I}\left(\operatorname{Im} \beta_{0}\right)$ and $\mathfrak{I}\left({\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{0}}}^{\partial}\right)$ are the defining $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))$ - $\partial_{t}$-ideal of $\operatorname{Im} \beta_{0}$ and ${\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{0}}}^{\partial}$ respectively in $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left\{\mathbf{X}_{0}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right\}$, and $\mathfrak{D}\left(\mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{v e c}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)\right)$ is the $\partial_{t}$-ideal in $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left\{\mathbf{X}_{0}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right\}$ generated by
the linear homogeneous polynomials given by the entries of $\mathbf{B} \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)$.
Let $T$ be the radical $\partial_{t}$-ideal inside $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left\{\mathbf{X}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{n}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right\}$ generated the entries of $\mathbf{B} \cdot \boldsymbol{v e c}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right), \operatorname{vec}\left(\partial_{t}^{1}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)-\left(\mathbf{X}_{1}\right)\right), \operatorname{vec}\left(\partial_{t}^{2}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)-\left(\mathbf{X}_{2}\right)\right), \ldots, \operatorname{vec}\left(\partial_{t}^{n}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)-\left(\mathbf{X}_{n}\right)\right)$, which are linear homogeneous $\partial_{t}$-polynomials, that is,

$$
T:=\mathfrak{R}\left(\mathbf{B} \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right), \operatorname{vec}\left(\partial_{t}^{1}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)-\left(\mathbf{X}_{1}\right)\right), \operatorname{vec}\left(\partial_{t}^{2}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)-\left(\mathbf{X}_{2}\right)\right), \ldots, \operatorname{vec}\left(\partial_{t}^{n}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)-\left(\mathbf{X}_{n}\right)\right)\right) .
$$

We set $\mathfrak{Z}(T)$ to be zero set of $T$ in $\mathrm{GL}_{r(n+1)}\left({\overline{\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))}}^{2}\right)$ and ${\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}$ to be the $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))-\partial_{t}$-closure of $\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}$. We see from Theorem 8 and (4.16) that $\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}{ }^{\partial} \subseteq \mathfrak{Z}(T)$. Moreover, Proposition 11 implies that

$$
\begin{equation*}
T=\mathfrak{D}\left(\mathbf{B} \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right), \operatorname{vec}\left(\partial_{t}^{1}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)-\left(\mathbf{X}_{1}\right)\right), \boldsymbol{v e c}\left(\partial_{t}^{2}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)-\left(\mathbf{X}_{2}\right)\right), \ldots, \operatorname{vec}\left(\partial_{t}^{n}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)-\left(\mathbf{X}_{n}\right)\right)\right), \tag{4.17}
\end{equation*}
$$

the $\partial_{t}$-ideal generated by the set of linear homogeneous $\partial_{t}$-polynomials given by the entries of $\mathbf{B} \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right), \operatorname{vec}\left(\partial_{t}^{1}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)-\left(\mathbf{X}_{1}\right)\right), \operatorname{vec}\left(\partial_{t}^{2}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)-\left(\mathbf{X}_{2}\right)\right), \ldots, \operatorname{vec}\left(\partial_{t}^{n}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)-\left(\mathbf{X}_{n}\right)\right)$.

We claim that ${\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}^{\partial}=\mathfrak{Z}(T)$. It suffices to show that $\Im\left({\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}^{\partial}\right) \subseteq T$. To do this, we define a monomial order on $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left\{\mathbf{X}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{n}\right\}$ and use the division algorithm [25, Prop. 1.9]. We denote by $\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^{(\infty)}$ the set of all sequences $\left(a_{1}, a_{2}, a_{3}, \ldots \ldots\right)$ of non-negative integers such that $a_{i}=0$ for all but finitely many $i \geq 1$. Note that any monomial in $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left\{\mathbf{X}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{n}\right\}$ can be described uniquely as $\mathbf{X}^{\mathbf{b}}=\prod \partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{i, j}\right)^{\left(b_{h, \ell}\right)_{i, j}}$ for some $\mathbf{b}=\left(\mathbf{b}_{0,0}, \mathbf{b}_{0,1} \ldots, \mathbf{b}_{1,0}, \mathbf{b}_{1,1}, \ldots, \ldots, \mathbf{b}_{n, 0}, \mathbf{b}_{n, 1}, \ldots\right) \in$ $\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^{(\infty)}$, where for $h=0, \ldots n$ and $\ell \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$, we have each $\mathbf{b}_{h, \ell}=\operatorname{vec}\left(\left(\left(b_{h, \ell}\right)_{i, j}\right)\right)^{\top}$ such that $\left(\left(b_{h, \ell}\right)_{i, j}\right)$ is an $r \times r$ matrix and $\left(b_{h, \ell}\right)_{i . j}=0$ for all but a finite number of $h, \ell, i, j$. We define a monomial order on $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left\{\mathbf{X}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{n}\right\}$ as in [25, Def. 1.1] in the following way:

- we set $\partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{1,1}\right)<\cdots<\partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{r, 1}\right)<\ldots \cdots<\partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{1, r}\right), \cdots<\partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{r, r}\right)$,
- we set $\partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{i_{1}, j_{1}}\right)<\partial_{t}^{\ell+1}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{i_{2}, j_{2}}\right)$,
- we set $\partial_{t}^{\ell_{1}}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{i_{1}, j_{1}}\right)<\partial_{t}^{\ell_{2}}\left(\left(X_{h+1}\right)_{i_{2}, j_{2}}\right)$,
- we take the pure lexicographic order defined such that $\mathbf{X}^{\mathbf{b}}<\mathbf{X}^{\mathbf{c}}$ if the left-most nonzero component of $\mathbf{b}-\mathbf{c}$ is negative,
where $\mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c} \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^{(\infty)}, \ell, \ell_{1}, \ell_{2} \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}, i, j, i_{1}, i_{2}, j_{1}, j_{2} \in\{0, \ldots, r\}$ and $h=0, \ldots, n$.
Now, let $F \in \mathfrak{I}\left({\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}^{\partial}\right) \subseteq \mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left\{\mathbf{X}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{n}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right\}$. Note that for $h=1, \ldots, n$, we have $\partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\partial_{t}^{h}\left(\left(X_{0}\right)_{i, j}\right)\right)<\partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{i, j}\right)$ and so the leading monomial of each $\partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\partial_{t}^{h}\left(\left(X_{0}\right)_{i, j}\right)-\left(X_{h}\right)_{i, j}\right)$ is $\partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{i, j}\right)$. Then, by using the division algorithm [25, Prop. 1.9] we see that

$$
\begin{equation*}
F=\sum_{h=1}^{n} \sum_{\ell=0}^{m_{h, i, j}} \sum_{i, j=1}^{r} \partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\partial_{t}^{h}\left(\left(X_{0}\right)_{i, j}\right)-\left(X_{h}\right)_{i, j}\right) \cdot f_{h, i, j}+H \tag{4.18}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $m_{h, i, j}$ is the largest number such that $\partial_{t}^{m_{h, i, j}}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{i, j}\right)$ occurs as a variable in $F$, each $f_{h, i, j} \in$ $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left\{\mathbf{X}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{n}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right\}$, and the remainder $H=H\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)$ is an element of the $\partial_{t}$-polynomial $\operatorname{ring} \mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left\{\mathbf{X}_{0}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right\}$. Note that for $g_{\epsilon}, \operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}$ and $\operatorname{Im} \beta_{0}$ as in Theorem 8 , there is a surjective map

$$
\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n} \rightarrow \operatorname{Im} \beta_{0}
$$

given by

$$
d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right] \mapsto g_{\epsilon} .
$$

Moreover $F\left(d_{t, n+1}\left[g_{\epsilon}\right]\right)=0$. Since $\sum_{h=1}^{n} \sum_{\ell=0}^{m_{h, i, j}} \sum_{i, j=1}^{n} \partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\partial_{t}^{h}\left(\left(X_{0}\right)_{i, j}\right)-\left(X_{h}\right)_{i, j}\right) \cdot f_{h, i, j} \in T$ and ${\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}^{2} \subseteq \mathfrak{Z}(T)$, we obtain from (4.18) that $H\left(g_{\epsilon}\right)=0$. Thus, $H\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)$ is an element of $\mathfrak{I}\left(\operatorname{Im} \beta_{0}\right)=\mathfrak{D}\left(\mathbf{B} \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)\right)$, the $\partial_{t}$-ideal in the $\partial_{t}$-polynomial ring $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left\{\mathbf{X}_{0}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right\}$. Thus, $F \in T$. This proves our claim. Therefore, $\overline{\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}{ }^{\partial}=\mathfrak{Z}(T)$.

We are now ready to compute ${\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}^{Z}$. Based on Lemma 7, we can find the defining equations of $\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}{ }^{Z}$ if we find

$$
\mathbf{T}:=T \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left[\mathbf{X}_{0}, \mathbf{X}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{n}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right]
$$

By (4.17), an element of $T$ is of the form

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{a}:=\sum_{u=1}^{r^{2}-r^{2} / s} c_{u} \cdot \partial_{t}^{v_{u}}\left(B_{u} \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)\right)+\sum_{h=1}^{n} \sum_{\ell=0}^{m_{h, i, j}} \sum_{i, j=1}^{r}\left(w_{h, \ell}\right)_{i, j} \cdot \partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\partial_{t}^{h}\left(\left(X_{0}\right)_{i, j}\right)-\left(X_{h}\right)_{i, j}\right), \tag{4.19}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $B_{u}$ is the $u$-th row of $\mathbf{B},\left(w_{h, \ell}\right)_{i, j}, c_{u} \in\left(\mathbb{F}_{q}((t)), \partial_{t}\right)$ and $m_{h, i, j} \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$ for $h=1, \ldots, n$, $i, j=1, \ldots r, u=1, \ldots, r^{2}-r^{2} / s$. Suppose $\mathbf{a} \in \mathbf{T} \subseteq \mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left[\mathbf{X}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{n}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right]$. Then, since for any $h=1, \ldots, n$ and for $1 \leq i, j \leq r$, the coordinate $\partial_{t}^{\ell}\left(\left(X_{h}\right)_{i j}\right)$ appears only once in a, we see that each $m_{h, i, j}=0$. Note that by the product rule of hyperderivatives, we have $\partial_{t}^{v_{u}}\left(B_{u}\right.$. $\left.\left.\operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)\right)=\sum_{h=1}^{v_{u}} \partial_{t}^{v_{u}-h}\left(B_{u}\right) \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\partial_{t}^{h}\left(\mathbf{X}_{0}\right)\right)\right)$. From (4.15), we see that $B_{u}=\left(\operatorname{vec}\left(\left(b_{u}\right)_{i, j}\right)^{\top}\right.$, where $\left(\left(b_{u}\right)_{i, j}\right)$ is the $r \times r$ matrix with $\left(b_{u}\right)_{i, j}$ in the $(i, j)$-th entry. Since each $m_{h, i, j}=0$ we see that for a to be in $T$, we need

$$
\sum_{u=1}^{r^{2}-r^{2} / s} c_{u} \cdot \partial_{t}^{v_{u}-h}\left(\left(b_{u}\right)_{i, j}\right) \partial_{t}^{h}\left(\left(X_{0}\right)_{1,1}\right)+\left(w_{h, 0}\right)_{i, j} \cdot \partial_{t}^{h}\left(\left(X_{0}\right)_{1,1}\right)=0
$$

that is, $\left(w_{h, 0}\right)_{i, j}=-\sum_{u=1}^{r^{2}-r^{2} / s} c_{u} \cdot \partial_{t}^{v_{u}-h}\left(\left(b_{u}\right)_{i, j}\right)$. Moreover, since each $\partial_{t}^{h}\left(\left(X_{0}\right)_{i j}\right)$ appears only once in the second sum of a, we need each $v_{u} \leq n$. Combining all the results above we obtain $\mathbf{a}=-\sum_{u=1}^{r^{2}-r^{2} / s} \sum_{h=1}^{v_{u}} c_{u} \cdot\left(\partial_{t}^{v_{u}-h}\left(B_{u}\right) \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{h}\right)\right)$ such that each $c_{u} \in \mathbb{F}_{q}((t))$. Varying $u$ from 1 to $r^{2}-r^{2} / s$, varying each $v_{u}$ from 0 to $n$ and varying $c_{u}$ over all elements of $\mathbb{F}_{q}((t))$, we see that the ideal $\mathbf{T}=T \cap \mathbb{F}_{q}((t))\left[\mathbf{X}_{0}, \mathbf{X}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{n}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right]$ is the same as the ideal generated by

$$
\left\{\sum_{h=0}^{n} \partial_{t}^{n-h}\left(B_{u}\right) \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{h}\right), \quad u=1, \ldots, r^{2}-r^{2} / s\right\}
$$

which can be written as

$$
d_{t, n+1}[\mathbf{B}] \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\begin{array}{c}
\mathbf{X}_{n} \\
\mathbf{X}_{n-1} \\
\vdots \\
\mathbf{X}_{0}
\end{array}\right),
$$

where we define $\operatorname{vec}\left(\left[\mathbf{X}_{n}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{0}\right]^{\top}\right):=\left[\left(\operatorname{vec} \mathbf{X}_{n}\right)^{\top}, \ldots,\left(\operatorname{vec} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right)^{\top}\right]^{\top}$. Since, by its definition,
$d_{t, n+1}[\mathbf{B}]$ is a block upper triangular matrix with all diagonal blocks equal to $\mathbf{B}$, we have that $\operatorname{rank} d_{t, n+1}[\mathbf{B}] \geq(n+1) \cdot \operatorname{rank} \mathbf{B}=(n+1) \cdot\left(r^{2}-r^{2} / s\right)$. Also, since $d_{t, n+1}[\mathbf{B}]$ is an $(n+1)$. $\left(r^{2}-r^{2} / s\right) \times(n+1) \cdot r^{2}$ matrix, we have that $\operatorname{rank} d_{t, n+1}[\mathbf{B}] \leq(n+1) \cdot\left(r^{2}-r^{2} / s\right)$ and so $\operatorname{rank} d_{t, n+1}[\mathbf{B}]=(n+1) \cdot\left(r^{2}-r^{2} / s\right)$. Since $\operatorname{rank} d_{t, n+1}[\mathbf{B}]$ is full, we see that

$$
d_{t, n+1}[\mathbf{B}] \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\begin{array}{c}
\mathbf{X}_{n}  \tag{4.20}\\
\mathbf{X}_{n-1} \\
\vdots \\
\mathbf{X}_{0}
\end{array}\right)=\mathbf{0}
$$

are the defining equations of $\overline{\overline{\operatorname{Im}}_{n}}{ }^{Z}$. Since each $\left(b_{u}\right)_{i j}$ is an element of $\mathbf{k}$, we see that each entry of $d_{t, n+1}[\mathbf{B}]$ is an element of $\mathbf{k}$ and so, $\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}{ }^{Z}$ is defined over $\mathbf{k}$. Moreover,
$\operatorname{dim} \overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}{ }^{Z}=(n+1) \cdot r^{2}-\operatorname{rank} d_{t, n+1}[\mathbf{B}]=(n+1) \cdot r^{2}-(n+1) \cdot\left(r^{2}-r^{2} / s\right)=(n+1) \cdot r^{2} / s$,
which gives the desired result.

### 4.4 Upper bound on Dimension of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$

Recall from Theorem 9 that for any k-algebra R and $n \geq 1$, an element of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ is of the form

$$
\mu=\left(\begin{array}{cccccc}
\gamma & \mathrm{A}_{1} & \ldots & \ldots & \mathrm{~A}_{n-1} & \mathrm{~A}_{n}  \tag{4.22}\\
& \gamma & \mathrm{~A}_{1} & \ddots & \ddots & \mathrm{~A}_{n-1} \\
& & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & & & \ddots & \mathrm{~A}_{1} \\
& & & & & \gamma
\end{array}\right)
$$

where for each $1 \leq i \leq n, \mathrm{~A}_{i}$ and $\gamma$ are $r \times r$ blocks, and for $0 \leq j \leq n-1$ the matrix formed by the upper left $r(j+1) \times r(j+1)$ square is an element of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ and $\gamma \in \Gamma_{M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$.

Since $\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}$ is a sub-t-motive of $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$, we have a short exact sequence of affine group schemes over $\mathbf{k}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
1 \rightarrow Q_{n} \rightarrow \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \xrightarrow{\pi_{n}} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}} \rightarrow 1 \tag{4.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\boldsymbol{\pi}_{n}^{(\mathrm{R})}: \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R}) \rightarrow \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ maps $\mu$ to the matrix formed by the upper left $r n \times r n$ square. An element of $Q_{n}(\mathrm{R})$ is of the form

$$
\nu=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathrm{Id}_{r} & 0 & \ldots & 0 & \mathbf{v} \\
& \mathrm{Id}_{r} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
& & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & & \ddots & 0 \\
& & & & \mathrm{Id}_{r}
\end{array}\right) \in \mathrm{GL}_{(n+1) r}(\mathrm{R})
$$

By using the commutative diagram (4.11) and Proposition 3(a), one checks directly that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\mathbf{v} \in \operatorname{Cent}_{\mathrm{Mat}_{r} / \mathbf{k}}\left(\mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)(\mathrm{R}), \tag{4.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\mathbf{K}_{\rho}:=\operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(M_{\rho}\right)$ and we set

$$
\operatorname{Cent}_{\mathrm{Mat}_{r} / \mathbf{k}}\left(\mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)(\mathrm{R}):=\left\{\gamma \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r}(\mathrm{R}) \mid \gamma g=g \gamma \text { for all } g \in \mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}} \mathbf{K}_{\rho} \subseteq \operatorname{Mat}_{r}(\mathrm{R})\right\} .
$$

Moreover, it can easily be checked that

$$
\mu \nu \mu^{-1}=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
\operatorname{Id}_{r} & 0 & \ldots & 0 & \gamma \mathbf{v} \gamma^{-1}  \tag{4.25}\\
& \mathrm{Id}_{r} & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
& & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & & \ddots & 0 \\
& & & & \mathrm{Id}_{r}
\end{array}\right)
$$

Similar to (4.23), since $M_{\rho}$ is a sub-t-motive of $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$, there is a surjective map of affine group
schemes over $\mathbf{k}$,

$$
\boldsymbol{\pi}: \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \rightarrow \Gamma_{M_{\rho}},
$$

where $\boldsymbol{\pi}^{(\mathrm{R})}: \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R}) \rightarrow \Gamma_{M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ is the map given by $\mu \mapsto \gamma$. Thus, via conjugation there is a left action of $\Gamma_{M_{\rho}}$ on $Q_{n}$ given by (4.25).

Theorem 11. Let $\rho$ be a Drinfeld A-module of rank $r$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$ and for $n \geq 1$, let $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ be its associated $n$-th prolongation t-module. Let $M_{\rho}$ and $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$ be the t-motives corresponding to $\rho$ and $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ respectively. If $Q_{n}$ in (4.23) is $\mathbf{k}$-smooth, then $\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \leq(n+1) \cdot r^{2} / s$.

Proof. By (4.24), for any k-algebra R we have the following well-defined map:

$$
\begin{equation*}
\alpha_{n}^{(\mathrm{R})}: Q_{n}(\mathrm{R}) \rightarrow \operatorname{Cent}_{\mathrm{Mat}_{r} / \mathbf{k}}\left(\mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)(\mathrm{R}) \tag{4.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since by hypothesis $Q_{n}$ is $\mathbf{k}$-smooth, regarding $\operatorname{Cent}_{\mathrm{Mat}_{r} / \mathbf{k}}\left(\mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)$ as an additive group scheme of dimension $r^{2} / s$ over $\mathbf{k}$, we see that the map $\alpha_{n}: Q_{n} \rightarrow \operatorname{Cent}_{\text {Mat }_{r} / \mathbf{k}}\left(\mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)$ defined above is a morphism of group schemes over k. Moreover, by (4.24), $\alpha_{n}$ is a monomorphism and so $\operatorname{dim} Q_{n} \leq$ $\operatorname{dim}$ Cent $_{\text {Mat }_{r} / \mathbf{k}}\left(\mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)$.

Now, by (4.23) our task is to prove that $\operatorname{dim} Q_{n}+\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}} \leq(n+1) \cdot r^{2} / s$, which we show by induction. For the base case $n=1$, since $\operatorname{dim~}_{\operatorname{Cent}_{M a t} / \mathbf{k}}\left(\mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)=r^{2} / s$ (by [19, Thm. 3.15(3)]) and $\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{M_{\rho}}=r^{2} / s$ (by [12, Thm. 3.5.4]) we see that $\operatorname{dim} Q_{1}+\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{M_{\rho}} \leq$ $\operatorname{dim} \operatorname{Cent}_{\text {Mat }_{r} / \mathbf{k}}\left(\mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)+\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{M_{\rho}}=2 \cdot r^{2} / s$. Suppose we have shown that $\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}} \leq$ $n \cdot r^{2} / s$. Similar to the base case, we obtain $\operatorname{dim} Q_{n}+\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}} \leq \operatorname{dim}_{\operatorname{Cent}_{\mathrm{Mat}_{r} / \mathbf{k}}}\left(\mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)+$ $\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}}=(n+1) \cdot r^{2} / s$.

Corollary 3. Let $\rho$ be a Drinfeld A-module of rank $r$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$ and for $n \geq 1$, let $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ be its associated n-th prolongation t-module. Let $M_{\rho}$ and $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$ be the t-motives corresponding to $\rho$ and $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ respectively. Let $\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}{ }^{Z}$ be the Zariski closure of $\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}$, where $\beta_{n}$ is as in Theorem 8. If $Q_{n}$ in (4.23) is k-smooth, then $\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}=(n+1) \cdot r^{2} / s$ and

$$
{\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}^{Z} / \mathbf{k}=\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} .
$$

Proof. We obtain $\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}=(n+1) \cdot r^{2} / s$ by combining Theorem 10 and Theorem 11. By (4.21) we see that $\operatorname{dim}{\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}^{Z}=\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$. Since the defining polynomials of ${\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}^{Z}$ are degree one polynomials, it is connected and so $\overline{\operatorname{Im~}_{n}}{ }^{Z} / \mathbf{k}=\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$.

Lemma 3. If $K_{\rho}$ is separable over $k$, then for $n \geq 1, Q_{n}$ in (4.23) is smooth over $\mathbf{k}$.

Remark 2. This lemma is the reason for the separability hypothesis in Theorem 2 and one of the reasons for the separability hypothesis in Theorem 4. However, suppose to the contrary that $K_{\rho}$ is not separable over $k$ but the hyperdifferential operator $\partial_{\theta}^{j}$ can be extended to $K_{\rho}$. In this case, if $Q_{n}$ is $\mathbf{k}$-smooth, then Theorem 2 holds for the Drinfeld A-module $\rho$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$.

Proof of Lemma 3. We adapt the ideas of the proof of [11, Prop. 4.1.2] and the proof of a lemma from a preliminary version of [12] (Lemma 5.1.3: arXiv:1005.5120v1). To prove this, by [37, Cor. 12.1.3] it suffices to show that the induced tangent map $\mathrm{d} \boldsymbol{\pi}_{n}$ at the identity is surjective onto Lie $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}}$. Since $\mathbf{K}_{\rho}$ is separable over $\mathbf{k}$ (by hypothesis and Proposition 2), we see from [12, Cor. 3.5.6] and [40, p. 61 Problem 14] that through conjugation by some $A \in \mathrm{GL}_{r}\left(\mathbf{k}^{\text {sep }}\right)$, we have an isomorphism

$$
\Gamma_{M_{\rho}} \times_{\mathbf{k}} \mathbf{K}_{\rho} \stackrel{\cong}{\rightrightarrows} \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)_{i},
$$

where

$$
\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)_{i}:=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} & & \\
& \ddots & \\
& & \mathrm{GL}_{r / s}
\end{array}\right)\right\}
$$

and $\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \mathbf{K}_{\rho}\right)_{i}$ is the canonical embedding of $\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \mathbf{K}_{\rho}$ into the $i$-th diagonal block matrix of $\mathrm{GL}_{r} / \mathbf{K}_{\rho}$. Making a change of basis, we obtain

$$
\Gamma_{M_{\rho}} \times_{\mathbf{k}} \overline{\mathbf{k}} \cong \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i} .
$$

For $n \geq 1$, it follows that via conjugation by $d_{t, n+1}[\mathrm{~A}] \in \mathrm{GL}_{(n+1) r}\left(\mathbf{k}^{\text {sep }}\right)$ on $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$, we obtain
$\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$, an algebraic subgroup of $\mathrm{GL}_{(n+1) r} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}$, such that there is an isomorphism

$$
\begin{equation*}
a: \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \times \mathbf{k} \overline{\mathbf{k}} \xrightarrow{\cong} \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} . \tag{4.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover, the projection $\overline{\boldsymbol{\pi}}_{n}: \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \rightarrow \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}}$ induced by $\boldsymbol{\pi}_{n}$ is surjective. Thus, we are reduced to proving that the induced tangent map $\mathrm{d} \overline{\boldsymbol{\pi}}_{n}: \operatorname{Lie} \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \rightarrow \operatorname{Lie} \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}}$ is surjective.

Similar to the coordinates of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ in (4.14), we make the choice to let the coordinates of $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ be

$$
\mathbf{Y}:=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathbf{Y}_{0} & \mathbf{Y}_{1} & \ldots & \ldots & \mathbf{Y}_{n} \\
& \mathbf{Y}_{0} & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & \mathbf{Y}_{0} & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & & \ddots & \mathbf{Y}_{1} \\
& & & & \mathbf{Y}_{0}
\end{array}\right)
$$

where $\mathbf{Y}_{h}:=\left(\left(Y_{h}\right)_{i j}\right)$, an $r \times r$ matrix for $h=0,1, \ldots, n$. Recall $\mathbf{X}$, the coordinates of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$, from (4.14). Then by construction we have $\mathbf{X}=d_{t, n+1}[\mathrm{~A}] \mathbf{Y} d_{t, n+1}[\mathrm{~A}]^{-1}$ and so for each $w=$ $0, \ldots, n$, we obtain

$$
\mathbf{X}_{w}=\sum_{\substack{w_{1}+w_{2}=w \\ w_{1}, w_{2} \geq 0}} \sum_{h=0}^{w_{1}} \partial_{t}^{w_{1}-h}(\mathrm{~A}) \cdot \mathbf{Y}_{w_{2}} \cdot\left(\partial_{t}^{h}(\mathrm{~A})\right)^{-1}
$$

where the hyperderivatives are taken entrywise. Then, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
\operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{X}_{w}\right) & =\sum_{\substack{w_{1}+w_{2}=w \\
w_{1}, w_{2} \geq 0}} \sum_{h=0}^{w_{1}}\left(\left[\left(\partial_{t}^{h}(\mathrm{~A})\right)^{-1}\right]^{\top} \otimes \partial_{t}^{w_{1}-h}(\mathrm{~A})\right) \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{Y}_{w_{2}}\right) \\
& =\sum_{\substack{w_{1}+w_{2}=w \\
w_{1}, w_{2} \geq 0}} \partial_{t}^{w_{1}}\left(\left(\mathrm{~A}^{-1}\right)^{\top} \otimes \mathrm{A}\right) \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{Y}_{w_{2}}\right),
\end{aligned}
$$

where we obtain the first equality by using properties of the Kronecker product and the second
equality by further applying the product rule for hyperderivatives. This implies

$$
\operatorname{vec}\left(\begin{array}{c}
\mathbf{X}_{n}  \tag{4.28}\\
\mathbf{X}_{n-1} \\
\vdots \\
\mathbf{X}_{0}
\end{array}\right)=d_{t, n+1}\left[\left(\mathrm{~A}^{-1}\right)^{\top} \otimes \mathrm{A}\right] \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\begin{array}{c}
\mathbf{Y}_{n} \\
\mathbf{Y}_{n-1} \\
\vdots \\
\mathbf{Y}_{0}
\end{array}\right)
$$

where we set

$$
\operatorname{vec}\left(\left[\mathbf{X}_{n}, \ldots, \mathbf{X}_{0}\right]^{\top}\right):=\left[\left(\operatorname{vec} \mathbf{X}_{n}\right)^{\top}, \ldots,\left(\operatorname{vec} \mathbf{X}_{0}\right)^{\top}\right]^{\top},
$$

and we define $\operatorname{vec}\left(\left[\mathbf{Y}_{n}, \ldots, \mathbf{Y}_{0}\right]^{\boldsymbol{\top}}\right)$ similarly. Recall $\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}{ }^{Z}$ from Theorem 3. Note that by Theorem 8, we have $\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}{ }^{Z} \subseteq \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$. For $i=0, \ldots, n$, let $\overline{\mathbf{k}}\left[\mathbf{Y}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{Y}_{i}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{Y}_{0}\right]$ be the polynomial ring over $\overline{\mathbf{k}}$ with $1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{Y}_{0}$ and the entries of each $\mathbf{Y}_{h}$ for $h=0, \ldots, i$ as indeterminates. Then, by (4.20), (4.27) and (4.28), the defining ideal of $a\left({\overline{\operatorname{Im} \beta_{n}}}^{Z} \times_{\mathbf{k}} \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)$ is the ideal in $\overline{\mathbf{k}}\left[\mathbf{Y}_{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{Y}_{n}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{Y}_{0}\right]$ generated by the entries of

$$
d_{t, n+1}\left[\mathbf{B} \cdot\left(\left(\mathrm{~A}^{-1}\right)^{\top} \otimes \mathrm{A}\right)\right] \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\begin{array}{c}
\mathbf{Y}_{n}  \tag{4.29}\\
\mathbf{Y}_{n-1} \\
\vdots \\
\mathbf{Y}_{0}
\end{array}\right)
$$

First suppose $n=1$. We consider the following short exact sequence of linear algebraic groups

$$
1 \rightarrow \bar{Q}_{1} \rightarrow \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}} \xrightarrow{\bar{\pi}_{1}} \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i} \rightarrow 1 .
$$

Our task is to prove that the induced tangent map at the identity $\mathrm{d} \overline{\boldsymbol{\pi}}_{1}$ is surjective. It is clear by observing $\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}$ that for $\mathbf{Y}_{0}:=\left(\left(Y_{0}\right)_{i, j}\right)$, the defining ideal of $\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}$ is the ideal in $\overline{\mathbf{k}}\left[\mathbf{Y}_{0}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{Y}_{0}\right]$ generated by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\left(Y_{0}\right)_{i, j} \mid(i, j) \neq\left(u r / s+v_{1}, u r / s+v_{2}\right), u=0, \ldots, s-1 \text { and } v_{1}, v_{2}=1, \ldots, r / s\right\} \tag{4.30}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover, by (4.16) and (4.28), the defining ideal of $\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}$ is also generated by the entries of

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\mathbf{B} \cdot\left(\left(\mathrm{A}^{-1}\right)^{\mathrm{T}} \otimes \mathrm{~A}\right)\right) \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{Y}_{0}\right) . \tag{4.31}
\end{equation*}
$$

By (4.30) and (4.31), we see that the entries of $\mathbf{B} \cdot\left(\left(A^{-1}\right)^{\top} \otimes A\right)$ that give relations among

$$
\left\{\left(Y_{0}\right)_{i, j} \mid(i, j)=\left(u r / s+v_{1}, u r / s+v_{2}\right), u=0, \ldots, s-1 \text { and } v_{1}, v_{2}=1, \ldots, r / s\right\}
$$

are all zero. Therefore, the hyperderivatives of these entries are also all zero. Using this and using (4.30), for $\gamma_{0} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\operatorname{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}$ we see that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial_{t}^{1}\left(\mathbf{B} \cdot\left(\left(\mathrm{~A}^{-1}\right)^{\top} \otimes \mathrm{A}\right)\right) \cdot \gamma_{0}=\mathbf{0} \tag{4.32}
\end{equation*}
$$

By using (4.31) and (4.32), we have

$$
d_{t, 2}\left[\mathbf{B} \cdot\left(\left(\mathrm{~A}^{-1}\right)^{\top} \otimes \mathrm{A}\right)\right] \cdot \operatorname{vec}\binom{\mathbf{0}}{\gamma_{0}}=\mathbf{0}
$$

and so by (4.29) for $n=1$, we see that

$$
\bar{\gamma}_{0}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
\gamma_{0} & \mathbf{0} \\
\hline \mathbf{0} & \gamma_{0}
\end{array}\right) \in \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})
$$

is a pre-image of $\gamma_{0}$ under the map $\overline{\boldsymbol{\pi}}_{1}$. Let $\bar{Q}_{1,1}$ be the Zariski closure of the subgroup inside $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}$ generated by all $\bar{\gamma}_{0}$ with $\gamma_{0}$ running over all elements of $\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}$. Then, $\bar{Q}_{1,1} \cong$ $\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}$. Since $\operatorname{Lie}(\cdot)$ is a left exact functor, when we restrict $\mathrm{d} \overline{\boldsymbol{\pi}}_{1}$ to $\operatorname{Lie}\left(\bar{Q}_{1,1}\right)$, we obtain a surjection onto $\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\operatorname{Mat}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})_{i}\right)$. Thus, $\mathrm{d} \overline{\boldsymbol{\pi}}_{1}$ is surjective and so $Q_{1}$ is smooth over $\mathbf{k}$.

Now let $n=2$. We consider the following short exact sequence of linear algebraic groups

$$
1 \rightarrow \bar{Q}_{2} \rightarrow \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{2} M_{\rho}} \xrightarrow{\bar{\pi}_{2}} \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}} \rightarrow 1 .
$$

Since $Q_{1}$ is smooth over $\mathbf{k}$, by Theorem 3 and (4.29) the defining ideal of $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}$ is the ideal in $\overline{\mathbf{k}}\left[\mathbf{Y}_{0}, \mathbf{Y}_{1}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{Y}_{0}\right]$ generated by the entries of

$$
\begin{equation*}
d_{t, 2}\left[\mathbf{B} \cdot\left(\left(\mathrm{~A}^{-1}\right)^{\top} \otimes \mathrm{A}\right)\right] \cdot \operatorname{vec}\binom{\mathbf{Y}_{1}}{\mathbf{Y}_{0}} . \tag{4.33}
\end{equation*}
$$

Recall that $\mathbf{Y}_{0}=\left(\left(Y_{0}\right)_{i, j}\right)$ and $\mathbf{Y}_{1}=\left(\left(Y_{1}\right)_{i, j}\right)$. Since the defining ideal of $\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}$ is the ideal in $\overline{\mathbf{k}}\left[\mathbf{Y}_{0}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{Y}_{0}\right]$ generated by the entries of (4.31), we see that the defining ideal of $\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\operatorname{Mat}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}$ is the ideal in $\overline{\mathbf{k}}\left[\mathbf{Y}_{1}\right]$ generated by the entries of

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\mathbf{B} \cdot\left(\left(\mathrm{A}^{-1}\right)^{\top} \otimes \mathrm{A}\right)\right) \cdot \operatorname{vec}\left(\mathbf{Y}_{1}\right) \tag{4.34}
\end{equation*}
$$

Therefore, using (4.32) we see that for all $\gamma_{0} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}$ and $\gamma_{1} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\operatorname{Mat}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}$, we have

$$
d_{t, 2}\left[\mathbf{B} \cdot\left(\left(\mathrm{~A}^{-1}\right)^{\top} \otimes \mathrm{A}\right)\right] \cdot \operatorname{vec}\binom{\gamma_{1}}{\gamma_{0}}=\mathbf{0} .
$$

Thus, by (4.33) we have

$$
\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
\gamma_{0} & \gamma_{1}  \tag{4.35}\\
\hline \mathbf{0} & \gamma_{0}
\end{array}\right): \gamma_{0} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}, \gamma_{1} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\operatorname{Mat}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}\right\} .
$$

By (4.35), the defining ideal of $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}$ is the ideal in $\overline{\mathbf{k}}\left[\mathbf{Y}_{0}, \mathbf{Y}_{1}, 1 / \operatorname{det} \mathbf{Y}_{0}\right]$ generated by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left\{\left(Y_{0}\right)_{i, j},\left(Y_{1}\right)_{i, j} \mid(i, j) \neq\left(u r / s+v_{1}, u r / s+v_{2}\right), u=0, \ldots, s-1 \text { and } v_{1}, v_{2}=1, \ldots, r / s\right\} \tag{4.36}
\end{equation*}
$$

By (4.33) and (4.36), we see that the entries of $d_{t, 2}\left[\mathbf{B} \cdot\left(\left(A^{-1}\right)^{\top} \otimes A\right)\right]$ that give relations among

$$
\left\{\left(Y_{0}\right)_{i, j},\left(Y_{1}\right)_{i, j} \mid(i, j)=\left(u r / s+v_{1}, u r / s+v_{2}\right), u=0, \ldots, s-1 \text { and } v_{1}, v_{2}=1, \ldots, r / s\right\}
$$

are all zero. Therefore, the hyperderivatives of these entries are also all zero. Using this and (4.36), we see that for any $\bar{\gamma}_{0,1}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}\gamma_{0} & \gamma_{1} \\ 0 & \gamma_{0}\end{array}\right) \in \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$,

$$
\partial_{t}^{2}\left(\mathbf{B} \cdot\left(\left(\mathrm{~A}^{-1}\right)^{\top} \otimes \mathrm{A}\right)\right) \cdot \gamma_{0}=\mathbf{0} ; \quad \partial_{t}^{1}\left(\mathbf{B} \cdot\left(\left(\mathrm{~A}^{-1}\right)^{\mathrm{T}} \otimes \mathrm{~A}\right)\right) \cdot \gamma_{1}=\mathbf{0}
$$

and so by (4.29) for $n=2$, we see that

$$
\bar{\gamma}_{1}=\left(\begin{array}{c|c|c}
\gamma_{0} & \gamma_{1} & \mathbf{0} \\
\hline \mathbf{0} & \gamma_{0} & \gamma_{1} \\
\hline \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{0} & \gamma_{0}
\end{array}\right) \in \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{2} M_{\rho}}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})
$$

is a pre-image of $\bar{\gamma}_{0,1}$ under the map $\bar{\pi}_{2}$. Let $\bar{Q}_{2,1}$ be the Zariski closure of the subgroup inside $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{2} M_{\rho}}$ generated by all $\bar{\gamma}_{1}$ with $\gamma_{0}$ and $\gamma_{1}$ respectively running over all elements of $\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}$ and $\prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\operatorname{Mat}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}$, that is, $\bar{\gamma}_{0,1}$ running over all elements of $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$. Then, $\bar{Q}_{2,1} \cong \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}$. Since $\operatorname{Lie}(\cdot)$ is a left exact functor, when we restrict $\mathrm{d} \overline{\boldsymbol{\pi}}_{2}$ to $\operatorname{Lie}\left(\bar{Q}_{2,1}\right)$, we obtain a surjection onto $\operatorname{Lie} \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}$.

For the general $n$ case, after having proven that $Q_{n-1}$ is smooth over $\mathbf{k}$, it follows by Theorem 3 and by applying the same methods used to determine (4.35) that

$$
\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}}=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{c|c|c|c}
\gamma_{0} & \gamma_{1} & \ldots & \gamma_{n-1}  \tag{4.37}\\
\hline & \gamma_{0} & \ddots & \vdots \\
\hline & & \ddots & \gamma_{1} \\
\hline & & & \gamma_{0}
\end{array}\right): \quad \gamma_{0} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}, \gamma_{j} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\operatorname{Mat}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i},\right\} .
$$

Similar to $\bar{Q}_{1,1}$ and $\bar{Q}_{2,1}$, we construct $\bar{Q}_{n, 1}$, the Zariski closure of the subgroup inside $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$
generated by

$$
\left\{\left(\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c}
\gamma_{0} & \gamma_{1} & \ldots & \gamma_{n-1} & \mathbf{0}  \tag{4.38}\\
\hline & \gamma_{0} & \ddots & \ddots & \gamma_{n-1} \\
\hline & & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\
\hline & & & \ddots & \gamma_{1} \\
\hline & & & & \gamma_{0}
\end{array}\right): \quad \gamma_{0} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}, \gamma_{j} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\operatorname{Mat}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}, \quad \forall j=1, \ldots, n-1 \quad \underset{\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}}{ }\right.
$$

Then, $\bar{Q}_{n, 1} \cong \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}}$. Since $\operatorname{Lie}(\cdot)$ is a left exact functor, restricting $\mathrm{d} \overline{\boldsymbol{\pi}}_{n}$ to Lie $\bar{Q}_{n, 1}$ gives a surjection onto Lie $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}}$. The details are similar to the $n=2$ case and so, we leave the task of constructing $\bar{Q}_{n, 1}$ to the reader.

### 4.5 Algebraic Independence of periods and quasi-periods

The following result proves Theorem 2.

Theorem 12. Fix $n \geq 1$. Let $\rho$ be a Drinfeld $\mathbf{A}$-module of rank $r$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$ and $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ be its associated $n$-th prolongation t-module. Suppose that $K_{\rho}$ is separable over $k$. Let $M_{\rho}$ and $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$ be the t-motives corresponding to $\rho$ and $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ respectively. Then, $\operatorname{tr} . \operatorname{deg}_{\bar{k}} \bar{k}\left(\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}(\theta)\right)=(n+1) \cdot r^{2} / s$, where $s=\left[K_{\rho}: k\right]$. In particular,

$$
\operatorname{tr} . \operatorname{deg}_{\bar{k}} \bar{k}\left(\bigcup_{s=1}^{n} \bigcup_{i=1}^{r-1} \bigcup_{j=1}^{r}\left\{\lambda_{j}, F_{\tau^{i}}\left(\lambda_{j}\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(\lambda_{j}\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\tau^{i}}\left(\lambda_{j}\right)\right)\right\}\right)=(n+1) \cdot r^{2} / s
$$

Proof. By Theorem 7, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\bar{k}\left(\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}(\theta)\right)=\bar{k}\left(\bigcup_{s=1}^{n} \bigcup_{i=1}^{r-1} \bigcup_{j=1}^{r}\left\{\lambda_{j}, F_{\tau^{i}}\left(\lambda_{j}\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(\lambda_{j}\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\tau^{i}}\left(\lambda_{j}\right)\right)\right\}\right) . \tag{4.39}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover, by Theorem 6 we have

$$
\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}=\operatorname{tr} \cdot \operatorname{deg}_{\bar{k}} \bar{k}\left(\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}(\theta)\right)
$$

Then, the result follows from Corollary 3 and Lemma 3.

## 5. HYPERDERIVATIVES OF LOGARITHMS AND QUASI-LOGARITHMS

In this chapter, we fix a Drinfeld A-module $\rho$ of rank $r$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$ and an A-basis $\left\{\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r}\right\}$ of $\Lambda_{\rho}$ as in $\S 3.1$. We let $M_{\rho}$ be the $t$-motive associated to $\rho$ along with a fixed $\bar{k}(t)$-basis $\boldsymbol{m} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r \times 1}\left(M_{\rho}\right)$, multiplication by $\sigma$ given by $\Phi_{\rho}$ as in (3.2), and rigid analytic trivialization $\Psi_{\rho}$ as in (3.10). Also for each $n \geq 1$, let $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$ be the $t$-motive corresponding to the $n$ th prolongation $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ of $\rho$ as in $\S 3.1$. Note that the 0 -th prolongation $t$-motive $\mathrm{P}_{0} M_{\rho}$ is simply $M_{\rho}$ via the map $D_{0} m \mapsto m$ for all $m \in M_{\rho}$. Then, a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis of $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$ is $\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{(n+1) r \times 1}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$ (see (2.3)) such that multiplication by $\sigma$ is given by $\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Phi_{\rho}\right]$ (see (2.4)) with rigid analytic trivialization $\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]$ (see (2.5)). We also set $\mathbf{K}_{\rho}:=\operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(M_{\rho}\right)$ as in (4.24) and let $K_{\rho}$ denote the field of fractions of $\operatorname{End}(\rho)$.

In what follows, we adapt the methods of Chang and Papanikolas (see [12, §5]).

## $5.1 t$-motives and quasi-logarithms

Given $u \in \mathbb{K}$ such that $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(u)=\alpha \in k^{\text {sep }}$, we set $f_{u}(t)$ to be the Anderson generating function of $\rho$ with respect to $u$ as in (3.5). Then, for $n \geq 1$ we see that by (4.3) the Anderson generating function of $\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho$ with respect to $\boldsymbol{u}_{n}=[u, 0, \ldots, 0]^{\top} \in \mathbb{K}^{n+1}$ is $\mathcal{G}_{u, 1}(t)=$ $\left[f_{u}(t), \partial_{t}^{1}\left(f_{u}(t)\right), \ldots, \partial_{t}^{n}\left(f_{u}(t)\right)\right]^{\top}$. Moreover, by (3.4) we obtain

$$
\operatorname{Exp}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}\left(\boldsymbol{u}_{n}\right)=\left[\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(u), 0 \ldots, 0\right]^{\top}=[\alpha, 0 \ldots, 0]^{\top} \in\left(k^{\mathrm{sep}}\right)^{n+1}
$$

We define

$$
\mathbf{s}_{\alpha}:=\left(\begin{array}{c}
-(t-\theta) f_{u}(t)-\alpha \\
-\left(\kappa_{2}^{(-1)} f_{u}^{(1)}(t)+\cdots+\kappa_{r-1}^{(-1)} f_{u}^{(r-2)}(t)+\kappa_{r}^{(-1)} f_{u}^{(r-1)}(t)\right) \\
-\left(\kappa_{3}^{(-2)} f_{u}^{(1)}(t)+\cdots+\kappa_{r-1}^{(-2)} f_{u}^{(r-3)}(t)+\kappa_{r}^{(-2)} f_{u}^{(r-2)}(t)\right) \\
\vdots \\
-\kappa_{r}^{(-r+1)} f_{u}^{(1)}(t)
\end{array} \operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times r}(\mathbb{T}),\right.
$$

as in [12, §4.2] and let $\mathbf{h}_{\alpha, n}:=(\alpha, 0, \ldots, 0) \in \operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times(n+1) r}\left(k^{\text {sep }}\right)$. Then, we define the pre- $t$ motive $Y_{\alpha, n}$ of dimension $(n+1) r+1$ over $\bar{k}(t)$ such that multiplication by $\sigma$ is given by $\Phi_{\alpha, n}:=$ $\left(\begin{array}{cc}\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{h}_{\alpha, n} & 1\end{array}\right)$. If we set $\mathbf{g}_{\alpha, n}:=\left(\mathbf{s}_{\alpha}, \partial_{t}^{1}\left(\mathbf{s}_{\alpha}\right), \ldots, \partial_{t}^{n}\left(\mathbf{s}_{\alpha}\right)\right)$, then we obtain the difference equation $\mathbf{g}_{\alpha, n}^{(-1)} \Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}=\mathbf{g}_{\alpha, n}+\mathbf{h}_{\alpha, n}$, and so we set $\Psi_{\alpha, n}:=\left(\begin{array}{cc}\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathrm{~g}_{\alpha, n} \Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & 1\end{array}\right)$ to obtain $\Psi_{\alpha, n}^{(-1)}=\Phi_{\alpha, n} \Psi_{\alpha, n}$. Thus, $Y_{\alpha, n}$ is rigid analytically trivial.

Proposition 4. Let $u \in \mathbb{K}$ such that $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}(u)=\alpha \in k^{\text {sep }}$. The rigid analytically trivial pre- $t$ motive $Y_{\alpha, n}$ is a t-motive.

Proof. To prove that $Y_{\alpha, n}$ is a $t$-motive, we follow the arguments of the proof of [34, Prop. 6.1.3]. Let $\mathcal{M}_{1}$ and $\mathcal{M}_{2}$ be A-finite dual $t$-motives such that multiplication by $\sigma$ on $\bar{k}[t]$-bases are represented by $\Phi_{1}$ amd $\Phi_{2}$ respectively. Then, multiplication by $\sigma$ on a suitable $\bar{k}[t]$-basis of the tensor product $\mathcal{M}_{1} \otimes_{\bar{k}(t)} \mathcal{M}_{2}$ is represented by the Kronecker product $\Phi_{1} \otimes \Phi_{2}$ (see [34, §3.2.5]). Let $\mathcal{C}$ be the A-finite dual $t$-motive associated to the Carlitz module $\mathfrak{C}$ (rank 1 Drinfeld A-module) uniquely determined by $\mathfrak{C}_{t}=\theta+\tau$ (see [34, §3.4.3]. Let $C:=\bar{k}(t) \otimes_{\bar{k}[t]} \mathcal{C}$ be the pre- $t$-motive associated to $\mathcal{C}$.

We claim that the pre-t-motive $C \otimes_{\bar{k}(t)} Y_{\alpha, n}$ is in the essential image of the functor $\mathcal{M} \mapsto M$ : $\mathcal{A} \mathcal{R}^{I} \rightarrow \mathcal{R}$ of [34, Thm. 3.4.9] (see $\S 2.2$ ). By the definition of the category $\mathcal{T}$ in [34, §3.4.10] (see $\S 2.2$ ), it follows that $Y_{\alpha, n}$ is a $t$-motive.

Let $\mathcal{N}:=\operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times(n+1) r+1}(\bar{k}[t])$ and let $\boldsymbol{e}:=\left[\boldsymbol{e}_{1}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{e}_{(n+1) r+1}\right]^{\top}$ be its standard $\bar{k}[t]$-basis. We give $\mathcal{N}$ a left $\bar{k}[t, \sigma]$-module structure by setting

$$
\sigma \boldsymbol{e}=(t-\theta) \Phi_{\alpha, n} \boldsymbol{e}
$$

We obtain the following short exact sequence of $\bar{k}[t, \sigma]$-modules:

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \rightarrow \mathcal{C} \otimes_{\bar{k}[t]} \mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}_{\rho} \rightarrow \mathcal{N} \rightarrow \mathcal{C} \rightarrow 0 \tag{5.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{C} \otimes_{\bar{k}[t]} \mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ are finitely generated left $\bar{k}[\sigma]$-modules, it follows from [2, Prop. 4.3.2]
that $\mathcal{N}$ is free and finitely generated as a left $\bar{k}[\sigma]$-module. Since $\mathcal{C} \otimes_{\bar{k}[t]} \mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}_{\rho}$ is an A-finite dual $t$-motive, we have $(t-\theta)^{u}\left(\mathcal{C} \otimes_{\bar{k}[t]} \mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}_{\rho}\right) \subseteq \sigma\left(\mathcal{C} \otimes_{\bar{k}[t]} \mathrm{P}_{n} \mathcal{M}_{\rho}\right)$ for $u \in \mathbb{N}$ sufficiently large. Moreover, $(t-\theta) \mathcal{C}=\sigma \mathcal{C}$ and so, by (5.1) we obtain $(t-\theta)^{v} \mathcal{N} \subseteq \sigma \mathcal{N}$ for $v \in \mathbb{N}$ sufficiently large. Thus, by $[34, \S 3.4 .1]$ (see $\S 2.2$ ) we see that $\mathcal{N}$ is an A-finite dual $t$-motive. This proves our claim.

### 5.2 Non-triviality in $\operatorname{Ext}_{\mathcal{T}}^{1}\left(1, \mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$

We continue with the $t$-motive $Y_{\alpha, n}$ from the previous section. Recall the trivial object 1 of $\mathcal{R}$ (see $\S 2.2$ ). Note that $Y_{\alpha, n}$ represents a class in $\operatorname{Ext}_{\mathcal{T}}^{1}\left(\mathbf{1}, \mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$. Suppose $e \in \operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(M_{\rho}\right)$ and let $\mathrm{E} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r}(\bar{k}(t))$ such that $e(\boldsymbol{m})=\mathrm{E} \boldsymbol{m}$. If we set

$$
\mathbf{E}:=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\mathbf{0} & \ldots & \mathbf{0} & \mathbf{E}  \tag{5.2}\\
& \ddots & \ddots & \mathbf{0} \\
& & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & & \mathbf{0}
\end{array}\right) \in \operatorname{Mat}_{(n+1) r}(\bar{k}(t)),
$$

then one checks easily that $\mathbf{E}$ represents an element $\mathbf{e}$ of $\operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$. For classes $Y_{1}$ and $Y_{2}$ in $\operatorname{Ext}_{\mathcal{T}}^{1}\left(\mathbf{1}, \mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$, if multiplication by $\sigma$ on suitable $\bar{k}(t)$-bases are represented by $\left(\begin{array}{cc}\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{v}_{1} & 1\end{array}\right)$ and $\left(\begin{array}{cc}\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{v}_{2} & 1\end{array}\right)$ respectively, then their Baer sum in $\operatorname{Ext}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\mathbf{1}, \mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$ is achieved by the matrix $\left(\begin{array}{cc}\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & \mathbf{0} \\ \mathbf{v}_{2}+\mathbf{v}_{2} & 1\end{array}\right)$. Moreover, we see that multiplication by $\sigma$ on a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis of the pushout $\mathbf{e}_{*} Y_{1}$ is represented by $\left(\begin{array}{cc}\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & 0 \\ \mathbf{v}_{1} \mathrm{E} & 1\end{array}\right)$.

Theorem 13. Suppose $u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w} \in \mathbb{K}$ such that $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(u_{i}\right)=\alpha_{i} \in k^{\text {sep }}$ for each $i$. For $n \geq 1$, we let $Y_{i, n}:=Y_{\alpha_{i}, n}$ be as above. Suppose that $\operatorname{dim}_{K_{\rho}} \operatorname{Span}_{K_{\rho}}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r}, u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w}\right)=r / s+$ w. Then, for $e_{1}, \ldots, e_{w} \in \mathbf{K}_{\rho}$, not all zero, $S:=\mathbf{e}_{1 *} Y_{1, n}+\cdots+\mathbf{e}_{w *} Y_{w, n}$ is non-trivial in $\operatorname{Ext}_{\mathcal{T}}^{1}\left(\mathbf{1}, \mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$, where each $\mathbf{e}_{i} \in \operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$ corresponds to $e_{i}$ as in (5.2).

Proof. We adapt the ideas of the proof of [12, Thm. 4.2.2]. For each $i$, we let $\mathbf{h}_{i, n}:=\mathbf{h}_{\alpha_{i}, n}$ and $\mathbf{g}_{i, n}:=\mathbf{g}_{\alpha_{i}, n} . \operatorname{Fix} E_{i} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r}(\bar{k}(t))$ so that $e_{i}(\boldsymbol{m})=E_{i} \boldsymbol{m}$ for each $i$. Then $\mathbf{e}_{i}\left(\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}\right)=\mathbf{E}_{i} \cdot \boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}$, where $\mathbf{E}_{i}$ is as in (5.2). By choosing an appropriate $\bar{k}(t)$-basis $\mathbf{s}$ for $S$, multiplication by $\sigma$ on $\mathbf{s}$ is represented by

$$
\Phi_{S}:=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n \rho}} & \mathbf{0} \\
\sum_{i=1}^{w} \mathbf{h}_{i, n} \mathbf{E}_{i} & 1
\end{array}\right) \in \mathrm{GL}_{(n+1) r+1}(\bar{k}(t)),
$$

and a corresponding rigid analytic trivialization is represented by

$$
\Psi_{S}:=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & 0 \\
\sum_{i=1}^{w} \mathbf{g}_{i, n} \mathbf{E}_{i} \Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & 1
\end{array}\right) \in \mathrm{GL}_{(n+1) r+1}(\mathbb{L}) .
$$

Suppose on the contrary that $S$ is trivial in $\operatorname{Ext}_{\mathcal{T}}^{1}\left(\mathbf{1}, \mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$. Then, there exists a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis $\mathbf{s}^{\prime}$ of $S$ such that $\sigma \mathbf{s}^{\prime}=\left(\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} \oplus(1)\right) \mathbf{s}^{\prime}$, where $\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} \oplus(1)$ is the block diagonal matrix with $\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}$ and 1 in the diagonal blocks and all other entries are zero. If we let $\gamma=\left(\begin{array}{c}\operatorname{Id}_{(n+1) r} \\ \gamma_{0} \ldots \gamma_{n} \\ \mathbf{o l}^{\prime}\end{array}\right) \in \operatorname{GL}_{(n+1) r+1}(\bar{k}(t))$, where $\gamma_{i}:=\left(\gamma_{i 1}, \ldots, \gamma_{i r}\right)$ for each $i$ be the matrix such that $\mathbf{s}^{\prime}:=\gamma \mathbf{s}$, then we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma^{(-1)} \Phi_{S}=\left(\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} \oplus(1)\right) \gamma \tag{5.3}
\end{equation*}
$$

Note from [34, Proof of Prop. 3.4.5] that all denominators of entries of $\gamma$ are in $\mathbb{F}_{q}[t]$ and so in particular, each $\gamma_{i j}$ is regular at $t=\theta, \theta^{q}, \theta^{q^{2}}, \ldots$ Using $\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Phi_{\rho}\right]$, the $((n+1) r+$ $1,(n-j) \cdot r+1)$-th entry of (5.3) for each $j=1, \ldots, n$ is

$$
\sum_{h=0}^{n-j} \gamma_{h, r}^{(-1)} \partial_{t}^{n-j-h}\left((t-\theta) / \kappa_{r}^{(-r)}\right)=\gamma_{n-j, 1}
$$

and the $((n+1) r+1, n r+1)$-th entry is

$$
\sum_{j=0}^{n} \gamma_{n-j, r}^{(-1)} \partial_{t}^{j}\left((t-\theta) / \kappa_{r}^{(-r)}\right)+\sum_{i=1}^{w} \alpha_{i}\left(E_{i}\right)_{11}=\gamma_{n, 1}
$$

For each $j=0,1, \ldots, n$, applying $(-1)^{j} \partial_{t}^{j}(\cdot)$ to each $((n+1) r+1,(n-j) \cdot r+1)$-th entry and then adding them, we obtain (by applying the product rule of hyperderivatives and using the property $\left.\partial_{t}^{v} \partial_{t}^{w}(f(t))=\binom{v+w}{v} \partial_{t}^{v+w}(f(t))\right)$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{j} \partial_{t}^{j}\left(\gamma_{n-j, r}\right)^{(-1)}\left((t-\theta) / \kappa_{r}^{(-r)}\right)+\sum_{i=1}^{w} \alpha_{i}\left(E_{i}\right)_{11}=\sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{j} \partial_{t}^{j}\left(\gamma_{n-j, 1}\right) \tag{5.4}
\end{equation*}
$$

Specializing both sides of this equation at $t=\theta$, we obtain

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{j} \partial_{t}^{j}\left(\gamma_{n-j, 1}\right)(\theta)=\sum_{i=1}^{w} \alpha_{i}\left(E_{i}\right)_{11}(\theta) \tag{5.5}
\end{equation*}
$$

Moreover, (5.3) implies that $\left(\gamma \Psi_{S}\right)^{(-1)}=\left(\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} \oplus(1)\right)\left(\gamma \Psi_{S}\right)$ and so by [34, §4.1.6], for some $\delta=\left(\begin{array}{cc}\mathrm{Id}_{(n+1) r} & \mathbf{0} \\ \delta_{0} \ldots \delta_{n} & 1\end{array}\right) \in \mathrm{GL}_{(n+1) r+1}(\mathbf{k})$ where $\delta_{i}:=\left(\delta_{i 1}, \ldots, \delta_{i r}\right)$ for each $i$, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\gamma \Psi_{S}=\left(\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} \oplus(1)\right) \delta \tag{5.6}
\end{equation*}
$$

Since $\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho}=d_{t, n+1}\left[\Psi_{\rho}\right]$, by applying to (5.6) the same methods applied on (5.3) to obtain (5.4), it follows that

$$
\begin{equation*}
\sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{j} \partial_{t}^{j}\left(\gamma_{n-j}\right)+\sum_{i=1}^{w} \mathbf{s}_{i} E_{i}=\sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{j} \partial_{t}^{j}\left(\delta_{n-j}\right) \Psi_{\rho}^{-1} \tag{5.7}
\end{equation*}
$$

where for each $i$ and $j$, we set $\partial_{t}^{j}\left(\gamma_{i}\right):=\left(\partial_{t}^{j}\left(\gamma_{i 1}\right), \ldots, \partial_{t}^{j}\left(\gamma_{i r}\right)\right)$. Since for each $i$ the first entry of $\mathbf{s}_{i}(\theta)$ is $u_{i}-\alpha_{i}$, using [12, Prop. 4.1.1(b)] and specializing both sides of (5.7) at $t=\theta$, we see that

$$
\sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{j} \partial_{t}^{j}\left(\gamma_{n-j, 1}\right)(\theta)+\sum_{i=1}^{w}\left(u_{i}-\alpha_{i}\right)\left(E_{i}\right)_{11}(\theta)=-\sum_{m=1}^{r} \sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{j} \partial_{t}^{j}\left(\delta_{n-j, m}\right)(\theta) \lambda_{m}
$$

and so from (5.5) we have

$$
\sum_{m=1}^{r} \sum_{j=0}^{n}(-1)^{j} \partial_{t}^{j}\left(\delta_{n-j, m}\right)(\theta) \lambda_{m}+\sum_{i=1}^{w}\left(E_{i}\right)_{11}(\theta) u_{i}=0
$$

Since $e_{1}, \ldots, e_{w}$ are not all zero, $E_{i}$ is nonzero for some $i$. Moreover, by Proposition 2 we see that $\mathbf{K}_{\rho} \cong K_{\rho}$ and so $E_{i}$ is invertible. By [12, Prop. 4.1.1(b),(c)] we get $\left(E_{i}\right)_{11}(\theta) \in K_{\rho}^{\times}$and thus we get a contradiction.

### 5.3 Construction of the $t$-motives $Y$ and $N$

In this section, we construct a $t$-motive that is suitable for the investigation of the hyperderivatives of logarithms and quasi-logarithms of the Drinfeld A-module $\rho$, and the study of its Galois
group. Suppose that we have $u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w} \in \mathbb{K}$ with $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(u_{i}\right)=\alpha_{i} \in k^{\text {sep }}$ for each $i$. We let $\mathbf{h}_{\alpha_{i}}:=\mathbf{h}_{\alpha_{i}, n}, \mathbf{g}_{\alpha_{i}}:=\mathbf{g}_{\alpha_{i}, n}, Y_{i, n}:=Y_{\alpha_{i}, n}, \Phi_{i, n}:=\Phi_{\alpha_{i}, n}$ and $\Psi_{i, n}:=\Psi_{\alpha_{i}, n}$ for each $n \geq 1$. The matrix $\Psi_{n}:=\oplus_{i=1}^{w} \Psi_{i, n}$ gives the rigid analytic trivialization for $Y_{n}:=\oplus_{i=1}^{w} Y_{i, n}$.

Define the $t$-motive $N_{n}$ such that multiplication by $\sigma$ on a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis is given by $\Phi_{N_{n}} \in$ $\mathrm{GL}_{(n+1) r w+1}(\bar{k}(t))$ along with rigid analytic trivialization $\Psi_{N_{n}} \in \mathrm{GL}_{(n+1) r w+1}(\mathbb{T})$ such that

$$
\Phi_{N_{n}}:=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & & \\
& \ddots & \\
& & \Phi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & \\
& & \\
\mathbf{h}_{\alpha_{1}} & \ldots & \mathbf{h}_{\alpha_{w}} & 1
\end{array}\right), \text { and } \quad \Psi_{N_{n}}:=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & & \\
& \ddots & \\
& & \Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & \\
& & & \\
\mathbf{g}_{\alpha_{1}} \Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & \ldots & \mathbf{g}_{\alpha_{w}} \Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} \rho} & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$

Similar to the $n=0$ case (see $[12, \S 5.1]), N_{n}$ is an extension of 1 by $\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}$ which is a pullback of the surjective map $Y_{n} \rightarrow \mathbf{1}^{w}$ and the diagonal map $\mathbf{1} \rightarrow \mathbf{1}^{w}$. Thus, the two $t$-motives $Y_{n}$ and $N_{n}$ generate the same Tannakian subcategory of $\mathcal{T}$ and hence the Galois groups $\Gamma_{Y_{n}}$ and $\Gamma_{N_{n}}$ are isomorphic. For any k-algebra R, an element of $\Gamma_{N_{n}}(\mathrm{R})$ is of the form

$$
\nu=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\mu & & & \\
& \ddots & & \\
& & \mu & \\
& & & \\
\mathbf{v}_{1} & \ldots & \mathbf{v}_{w} & 1
\end{array}\right),
$$

where $\mu \in \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ and for each $i$, we have $\mathbf{v}_{i}=\left(\mathbf{v}_{i, 1}, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{i, n+1}\right)$ such that $\mathbf{v}_{i, h} \in \mathbb{G}_{a}^{r}(\mathrm{R})=$ $\operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times r}(\mathrm{R})$, for each $h=0, \ldots, n$. Since $\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}$ is a sub- $t$-motive of $N_{n}$, we have the following short exact sequence of affine group schemes over $\mathbf{k}$,

$$
\begin{equation*}
1 \rightarrow X_{n} \rightarrow \Gamma_{N_{n}} \xrightarrow{\pi_{n}} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \rightarrow 1, \tag{5.8}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\pi_{n}^{(\mathrm{R})}: \Gamma_{N_{n}}(\mathrm{R}) \rightarrow \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ is the map $\nu \mapsto \mu$ (cf. [12, p.138]). It can be checked directly
that via conjugation, (5.8) gives an action of any $\mu \in \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ on

$$
\mathbf{v}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\operatorname{Id}_{(n+1) r} & & & \\
& \ddots & & \\
& & \operatorname{Id}_{(n+1) r} & \\
& & \mathbf{u}_{w} & 1
\end{array}\right) \in X_{n}(\mathrm{R})
$$

given by

$$
\nu \mathbf{v} \nu^{-1}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\operatorname{Id}_{(n+1) r} & & &  \tag{5.9}\\
& \ddots & & \\
& & \operatorname{Id}_{(n+1) r} & \\
& \ldots & \mathbf{u}_{w} \mu^{-1} & 1
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Lemma 4. Let $n \geq 1$. If $K_{\rho}$ is separable over $k$, then $X_{n}$ in (5.8) is $\mathbf{k}$-smooth.

Remark 3. Similar to what was said in Remark 2, Lemma 3 and this lemma are the reasons for the separability hypothesis in Theorem 4. However, suppose to the contrary that $K_{\rho}$ is not separable over $k$ but the hyperdifferential operator $\partial_{\theta}^{j}$ can be extended to $K_{\rho}$. In this case, if for $n \geq 1$ each $Q_{n}$ and $X_{n}$ are k-smooth, then Theorem 4 holds for the Drinfeld A-module $\rho$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$.

Proof of Lemma 4. Similar to Lemma 3, we adapt the ideas of the proof of [11, Prop. 4.1.2] and the proof of a lemma from a preliminary version of [12] (Lemma 5.1.3: arXiv:1005.5120v1). To prove this, by [37, Cor. 12.1.3] it suffices to show that for $n \geq 1$, the induced tangent map $\mathrm{d} \pi_{n}$ at the identity is surjective onto $\operatorname{Lie} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$. We prove this for $w=1$. The argument used in this case can be applied in a straightforward manner to prove the arbitrary $w$ case, which we leave to the reader. First suppose $n=1$. Let $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}$ and A be as in Lemma 3, that is, conjugation by $d_{t, 2}[\mathrm{~A}] \in \mathrm{GL}_{2 r}\left(\mathbf{k}^{\text {sep }}\right)$ on $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}$ gives (see (4.35))

$$
\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{c|c}
\gamma_{0} & \gamma_{1}  \tag{5.10}\\
\hline \mathbf{0} & \gamma_{0}
\end{array}\right): \gamma_{0} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}, \gamma_{1} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{Mat}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}\right\} .
$$

Let $\left(\oplus_{i=1}^{w} d_{t, 2}[\mathrm{~A}]\right) \oplus(1) \in \mathrm{GL}_{2 r w+1}\left(\mathbf{k}^{\text {sep }}\right)$ be the block diagonal matrix such that $d_{t, 2}[\mathrm{~A}]$ is in the first $w$ diagonal blocks and 1 in the last diagonal and all other entries are zero. Then, via conjugation by $\left(\oplus_{i=1}^{w} d_{t, 2}[\mathrm{~A}]\right) \oplus(1)$ on $\Gamma_{N_{1}}$ we obtain $\bar{\Gamma}_{N_{1}}$ such that we have an isomorphism $\Gamma_{N_{1}} \times_{\mathbf{k}} \overline{\mathbf{k}} \cong \bar{\Gamma}_{N_{1}}$. Moreover, $\bar{\Gamma}_{N_{1}}$ is an algebraic subgroup of $\mathrm{GL}_{2 r w+1} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}$ such that $\bar{\pi}_{1}: \bar{\Gamma}_{N_{1}} \rightarrow \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}$ induced by $\pi_{1}$ is surjective. Thus, we are reduced to proving that the induced tangent map $\mathrm{d} \bar{\pi}_{1}: \operatorname{Lie} \bar{\Gamma}_{N_{1}} \rightarrow$ Lie $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}$ is surjective. Let $w=1$ and consider the short exact sequence of linear algebraic groups

$$
\begin{equation*}
1 \rightarrow \bar{X}_{1} \rightarrow \bar{\Gamma}_{N_{1}} \xrightarrow{\bar{\pi}_{1}} \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}} \rightarrow 1 . \tag{5.11}
\end{equation*}
$$

From $\bar{\pi}_{1}$, we see that $\bar{X}_{1}$ is contained in the $2 r$-dimensional additive group

$$
G:=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\operatorname{Id}_{r / s} & & & \\
& \ddots & & \\
& & \mathrm{Id}_{r / s} & \\
& & & \\
\mathbf{v}_{1} & \cdots & \mathbf{v}_{2 s} & 1
\end{array}\right): \mathbf{v}_{i} \in \mathbb{G}_{a}^{r / s}\right\}
$$

where we call $\mathbf{v}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{2 s}$ the coordinates of $G$. We see that via conjugation, $\bar{X}_{1}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ has a $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ module structure coming from (5.20) (see (5.9)). Using (5.10) and this module structure, one checks easily that there is a natural decomposition $\bar{X}_{1}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})=\prod_{i}^{2 s} W_{i}$ such that each $W_{i}$ is either zero or $\overline{\mathbf{k}}^{r / s}$. Fix any $1 \leq i \leq s$. For any $\gamma_{i} \in \mathrm{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$, we let

be an arbitrary element, which by (5.10) and (5.11) is a pre-image of the matrix formed by the
upper left $2 r \times 2 r$ square of $\overline{\gamma_{i}}$ under the map $\bar{\pi}_{1}$. For each $j \neq i$ with $1 \leq j \leq s$, we claim that if $\mathbf{u}_{j} \neq 0$ and $\mathbf{u}_{s+j} \neq 0$, then $W_{j}=W_{s+j}=\overline{\mathbf{k}}^{r / s}$. To prove this claim, assuming that $\mathbf{u}_{j} \neq 0$ and $\mathbf{u}_{s+j} \neq 0$ we pick $\delta_{j} \in \mathrm{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ so that $\mathbf{u}_{j} \delta_{j}-\mathbf{u}_{j} \neq 0$ and $\mathbf{u}_{s+j} \delta_{j}-\mathbf{u}_{s+j} \neq 0$, and let $\bar{\delta}_{j} \in \bar{\Gamma}_{N_{1}}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ be such that

Then one checks directly that $\bar{\delta}_{j}^{-1} \bar{\gamma}_{i} \bar{\delta}_{j} \bar{\gamma}_{i}^{-1}$ is an element of $\bar{X}_{1}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ and its $\mathbf{v}_{j}$ and $\mathbf{v}_{s+j}$ coordinate vectors respectively are $\mathbf{u}_{j} \delta_{j}-\mathbf{u}_{j}$ and $\mathbf{u}_{s+j} \delta_{j}-\mathbf{u}_{s+j}$, and so it follows that $W_{j}=W_{s+j}=\overline{\mathbf{k}}^{r / s}$. Therefore, multiplying $\bar{\gamma}_{i}$ by a suitable element of $\bar{X}_{1}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ we get an element of the form

For any $\mathbf{b}_{i} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$, by using a similar method as above where we take an element of the form $\bar{\delta}_{j}$, we obtain an element of the form
which is a pre-image of the matrix formed by the upper left $2 r \times 2 r$ square of $\overline{\mathbf{b}}_{i}^{\prime}$ under the map $\bar{\pi}_{1}$. Let $\bar{X}_{1, i}$ be the Zariski closure inside $\bar{\Gamma}_{N_{1}}$ of the subgroup generated by all $\bar{\gamma}_{i}^{\prime}$ with $\gamma_{i}$ running over all elements of $\mathrm{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ and $\mathbf{b}_{i}^{\prime}$ with $\mathbf{b}_{i}$ running over all elements of $\mathrm{Mat}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$. Let

$$
\left(\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}:=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\gamma_{0} & \gamma_{1} \\
\mathbf{0} & \gamma_{0}
\end{array}\right): \gamma_{0} \in\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i} ; \gamma_{1} \in\left(\operatorname{Mat}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}\right\}
$$

where we set $\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}$ and $\left(\operatorname{Mat}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}$ to be the canonical embeddings of $\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}$ and $\mathrm{Mat}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}$ into the $i$-th diagonal block matrix of $\mathrm{GL}_{r} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}$ and $\mathrm{Mat}_{r} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}$ respectively. Note that $\operatorname{dim} \bar{X}_{1, i} \leq 2 r^{2} / s^{2}+2 r / s$. First suppose that $\operatorname{dim} \bar{X}_{1, i}=2 r^{2} / s^{2}+2 r / s$. Then, we could simply take $\bar{\gamma}_{i}^{\prime}$ and $\overline{\mathbf{b}}_{i}^{\prime}$ so that $\mathbf{u}_{i}, \mathbf{u}_{s+1}, \mathbf{w}_{i}$ and $\mathbf{w}_{s+i}$ are zero. Taking the Zariski closure $\bar{X}_{1,0, i}$ inside $\bar{\Gamma}_{N_{1}}$ of the subgroup generated by all such $\bar{\gamma}_{i}^{\prime}$ and $\mathbf{b}_{i}^{\prime}$ with $\gamma_{i}$ running over all elements of $\mathrm{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ and $\mathbf{b}_{i}^{\prime}$ with $\mathbf{b}_{i}$ running over all elements of $\operatorname{Mat}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$, we obtain

$$
\bar{X}_{1,0, i}=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\nu_{i} & \mathbf{0}  \tag{5.12}\\
\mathbf{0} & 1
\end{array}\right): \nu_{i} \in\left(\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}\right\} .
$$

Restricting d $\bar{\pi}_{1}$ to Lie $\bar{X}_{1,0, i}$, we obtain a surjection onto $\operatorname{Lie}\left(\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}$. As we vary all $1 \leq i \leq s$, the surjection of $\mathrm{d} \bar{\pi}_{1}$ follows.

Next, suppose that $\operatorname{dim} X_{1, i}<2 r^{2} / s^{2}+2 r / s$. Then, via $\bar{\pi}_{1}$ we have a short exact sequence,

$$
1 \rightarrow Q_{1, i} \rightarrow \bar{X}_{1, i} \xrightarrow{\bar{\pi}_{1, i}}\left(\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i} \rightarrow 1
$$

where $Q_{1, i}$ is contained in an additive subgroup of $G$ whose $\mathbf{v}_{j}$ coordinate vector is zero for all $j \neq i, s+i$ and $\operatorname{dim} Q_{1, i}<2 r / s$.

We first show that $\operatorname{dim} Q_{1, i}=0$. We follow the argument of the proof of [11, Lem. 4.1.1].

Suppose $\operatorname{dim} Q_{1, i}=m$, where $1 \leq m<2 r / s$. Note that $Q_{1, i}$ is a vector group. We claim that

If $\mathbf{v}_{i, j} \neq 0$ for all $j \in\{1, \ldots, r / s\}$, then there exists $\overline{\mathbf{k}}$-linearly independent elements $\mu_{1}, \ldots, \mu_{m} \in$ $Q_{1, i}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ such that all the entries of $\mu_{1}$ in the $\mathbf{v}_{i}$ coordinate vector are non-zero. For $a \in \overline{\mathbf{k}}$ such that $a \neq 0,1$, pick $\eta \in \bar{X}_{1, i}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ such that
where

$$
\mathfrak{a}:=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
a & & & & \\
& 1 & & & \\
& & \ddots & & \\
\\
& & c_{a} & & \\
\hline & & & & \\
& & & & \ddots \\
& & & & \\
&
\end{array}\right) .
$$

Then, one checks directly that $\eta^{-1} \mu_{1} \eta, \mu_{1}, \mu_{2}, \ldots, \mu_{m}$ are $\overline{\mathbf{k}}$-linearly independent in $Q_{1, i}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$, which contradicts $\operatorname{dim} Q_{1, i}=m$. This proves our claim. Thus, $\mathbf{v}_{i, u}=0$ for some $u \in\{1, \ldots, r / s\}$.

Now, since $m \neq 0$, at least one of $\mathbf{v}_{i, j}, j \in\{1, \ldots, r / s\}$ is non-zero, say $\mathbf{v}_{i, v}$. Let $\mathbf{P}_{u, v}$ be the permutation matrix obtained by switching the $((i-1) r / s+u)$-th column and the $((i-1) r / s+v)$ -
column of the $r \times r$ identity matrix. Pick $\gamma \in \bar{X}_{1, i}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ such that

$$
\bar{\pi}_{1, i}(\gamma)=\left(\begin{array}{ll}
\mathbf{P}_{u, v} & \\
& \mathbf{P}_{u, v}
\end{array}\right) \in\left(\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})_{i} .\right.
$$

Then, since $\gamma^{-1} Q_{1, i} \gamma \subseteq Q_{1, i}$, we get a contradiction to $\mathbf{v}_{i, u}=0$. Therefore, $\operatorname{dim} Q_{1, i}=0$.
Now, we claim that $\mathrm{d} \bar{\pi}_{1, i}: \operatorname{Lie} \bar{X}_{1, i} \rightarrow \operatorname{Lie}\left(\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}$ is surjective. As we vary all $1 \leq i \leq s$, the surjection of $\mathrm{d} \bar{\pi}_{1}$ follows. To prove that $\mathrm{d} \bar{\pi}_{1, i}$ is surjective, we follow the argument of the proof of [11, Prop. 4.1.2]. We let the coordinates of $\bar{X}_{1, i}$ be as follows:

$$
\mathbf{Z}_{1}:=\left(\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathcal{Z}_{0} & \mathcal{Z}_{1} & 0  \tag{5.13}\\
& \mathcal{Z}_{0} & 0 \\
\mathcal{W}_{0} & \mathcal{W}_{1} & 1
\end{array}\right)
$$

where

$$
\mathcal{Z}_{0}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\mathrm{Id}_{r / s} & & & \\
& \ddots & & \\
& & \left(Z_{0}\right) & \\
& & & \\
& & & \ddots \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& \mathrm{Id}_{r / s}
\end{array}\right), \quad \mathcal{Z}_{1}=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\mathbf{0} & & & \\
& & & \\
& & \left(Z_{1}\right) & \\
& & & \ddots
\end{array}\right)
$$

such that $\left(Z_{0}\right)$ and $\left(Z_{1}\right)$ are the coordinates of $\mathrm{GL}_{r / s}$ and $\mathrm{Mat}_{r / s}$ respectively, and for each $h=$ 0,1 , we define $\left(Z_{h}\right)$ to be the $r / s \times r / s$ block $\left(\left(Z_{h}\right)_{a, b}\right)$ for $1 \leq a, b \leq r / s$. Moreover, $\mathcal{W}_{h}:=\left(0, \ldots, 0,\left(W_{h}\right), 0, \ldots 0\right)$, where we set $\left(W_{h}\right):=\left(W_{h, 1}, \ldots, W_{h, r / s}\right)$ for each $h=0,1$. For $1 \leq u, v \leq r / s$, we define the following one-dimensional subgroups of $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}}$ :

$$
T_{u v}:=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\mathcal{B}_{u v} & \mathbf{0}  \tag{5.14}\\
\mathbf{0} & \mathcal{B}_{u v}
\end{array}\right)\right\}, \quad U_{u v}:=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\mathrm{Id}_{r} & \mathcal{C}_{u v} \\
\mathbf{0} & \mathrm{Id}_{r}
\end{array}\right)\right\}
$$

where we set

$$
\mathcal{B}_{u v}:=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
\operatorname{Id}_{r / s} & & & &  \tag{5.15}\\
& \ddots & & & \\
& & B_{u v} & & \\
& & & \ddots & \\
& & & & \mathrm{Id}_{r / s}
\end{array}\right), \quad \mathcal{C}_{u v}:=\left(\begin{array}{lllll}
\mathbf{0} & & & & \\
& \ddots & & & \\
& & C_{u v} & & \\
& & & \ddots & \\
& & & & 0
\end{array}\right)
$$

such that

$$
B_{v v}:=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{llll}
1 & & &  \tag{5.16}\\
& \ddots & & \\
& & * & \\
& & & \ddots \\
& & & \\
& & & \\
& & 1
\end{array}\right\}, \quad B_{u v}:=\left\{\begin{array}{cccc}
1 & 0 & \ldots & 0 \\
0 & \ddots & * & \vdots \\
\vdots & \ddots & \ddots & 0 \\
0 & \ldots & 0 & 1
\end{array}\right)\right\}
$$

and

$$
C_{u v}:=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{llll}
0 & & &  \tag{5.17}\\
& \ddots & * & \\
& & \ddots & \\
& & & 0
\end{array}\right)\right\}
$$

where $*$ in $B_{u v}$ and $C_{u v}$ are in the $(u, v)$-coordinates. Note that the Lie algebras of the $2 \cdot r^{2} / s^{2}$ algebraic groups $T_{u v}$ and $U_{u v}$ span $\operatorname{Lie}\left(\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}$. We construct one dimension algebraic subgroups $T_{u v}^{\prime}$ and $U_{u v}^{\prime}$ of $\bar{X}_{1, i}$ so that $T_{u v}^{\prime} \cong T_{u v}$ and $U_{u v}^{\prime} \cong U_{u v}$. Then, since Lie $(\cdot)$ is a left exact functor, it follows that Lie $T_{u v}^{\prime} \cong \operatorname{Lie} T_{u v}$ and Lie $U_{u v}^{\prime} \cong \operatorname{Lie} U_{u v}$, and so $\mathrm{d} \bar{\pi}_{1, i}$ is surjective. Since $Q_{1, i}$ is a zero dimensional vector group, $\bar{\pi}_{1, i}$ is injective on points and so it follows by checking directly that

- for $w \neq v$, all $W_{0, w}$ and $W_{1, w}$ coordinates of $\bar{\pi}_{1, i}^{-1}\left(T_{u v}\right)$ are zero;
- all $\left(W_{0}\right)$ coordinates of $\bar{\pi}_{1, i}^{-1}\left(U_{u v}\right)$ are zero, and for $w \neq v$, all $W_{1, w}$ coordinates of $\bar{\pi}_{1, i}^{-1}\left(U_{u v}\right)$
are zero.

To construct $T_{v v}^{\prime}$, we let $a_{v} \in \overline{\mathbf{k}}^{\times} \backslash{\overline{\mathbb{F}_{q}}}^{\times}$and pick element $\gamma_{1, v} \in \bar{X}_{1, i}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ so that

$$
\bar{\pi}_{\ell, i}\left(\gamma_{1, v}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\mathfrak{a}_{v} &  \tag{5.18}\\
& \\
& \mathfrak{a}_{v}
\end{array}\right), \text { where } \mathfrak{a}_{v}=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
1 & & & \\
& \ddots & & & \\
& & a_{v} & & \\
& & & \ddots & \\
& & & & 1
\end{array}\right) \in\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}
$$

such that $a_{v}$ is in the $(i \cdot r / s+v)$-th diagonal entry of $\mathfrak{a}_{v}$. For $1 \leq v \leq r / s$, we let $c_{0, v}$ and $c_{1, v}$ respectively be the $(2 r+1,(i-1) \cdot r / s+v)$-th and the $(2 r+1,(r+(i-1) \cdot r / s)+v)$-th the entry of $\gamma_{1, v}$. Let $T_{v v}^{\prime}$ be the Zariski closure of the subgroup of $\bar{X}_{1, i}$ generated by $\gamma_{1, v}$, for each $v=1, \ldots, r / s$. Then, one checks directly that the defining equations of the one dimensional subgroup $T_{v v}^{\prime}$ of $\bar{X}_{1, i}$ can be written as follows:

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\left(a_{v}-1\right) W_{0, v}-c_{0, v}\left(\left(Z_{0}\right)_{v, v}-1\right)=0, \quad \forall 1 \leq v \leq r^{2} / s \\
\left(Z_{0}\right)_{w, w}=1 \quad \forall w \neq v, \quad 1 \leq v \leq r^{2} / s \\
\left(Z_{1}\right)_{u, v}=0 \forall 1 \leq u, v \leq r / s \\
W_{h, w}=0 \forall w \neq v ; h=0,1, \quad 1 \leq v \leq r^{2} / s \\
W_{0, v} \cdot c_{1, v}-W_{1, v} \cdot c_{0, v}=0 \quad \forall 1 \leq v \leq r^{2} / s
\end{array}\right.
$$

Then, we see that $T_{v v}^{\prime} \cong T_{v v}$ via $\bar{\pi}_{1, i}$. Similarly, we use the methods used for $T_{v v}^{\prime}$ to construct $U_{v v}^{\prime}$ such that $U_{v v}^{\prime} \cong U_{v v}$ for all $v=1, \ldots, r / s$. To construct $T_{u v}^{\prime}$ when $u \neq v$, we let $b_{u, v} \in T_{u v}(\mathbf{k})$ be a k-rational basis for the one dimensional vector group $T_{u v}$ and pick $b_{u, v}^{\prime} \in \bar{X}_{1, i}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ so that $\overline{\boldsymbol{\pi}}_{1, i}\left(b_{u, v}^{\prime}\right)=b_{u, v}$. We define $T_{u v}^{\prime}$ to be the one dimensional vector group in $\bar{X}_{1, i}$ via the conjugations

$$
\eta_{v}^{-1} b_{u v}^{\prime} \eta_{v}, \quad \text { for } \eta_{v} \in T_{v v}^{\prime}, \quad v=1, \ldots, r / s
$$

Then, we obtain $T_{u v}^{\prime} \cong T_{u v}$ via $\bar{\pi}_{1, i}$. Similarly, to construct $U_{u v}^{\prime}$ for $u \neq v$, we let $d_{u, v} \in U_{u v}(\mathbf{k})$ be a k-rational basis for the one dimensional vector group $U_{u v}$ and pick $d_{u, v}^{\prime} \in \bar{X}_{1, i}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ so that
$\bar{\pi}_{1, i}\left(d_{u, v}^{\prime}\right)=d_{u, v}$. We define $U_{u v}^{\prime}$ to be the one dimensional vector group in $\bar{X}_{1, i}$ via the conjugations

$$
\eta_{v}^{-1} d_{u, v}^{\prime} \eta_{v}, \quad \text { for } \eta_{v} \in T_{v v}^{\prime}, \quad v=1, \ldots, r / s
$$

Then, we obtain $U_{u v}^{\prime} \cong U_{u v}$ via $\bar{\pi}_{1, i}$. This proves our claim.
Now suppose $n>1$. We follow the methods used for $n=1$ to prove that the induced tangent map $\mathrm{d} \pi_{n}$ at the identity is surjective onto $\operatorname{Lie} \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$. Recall $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ and A from Lemma 3, where conjugation by $d_{t, n+1}[\mathrm{~A}]$ on $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ gives (see (4.37))

$$
\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\gamma_{0} & \gamma_{1} & \ldots & \gamma_{n}  \tag{5.19}\\
& \gamma_{0} & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & \ddots & \gamma_{1} \\
& & & \gamma_{0}
\end{array}\right): \gamma_{0} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}, \gamma_{j} \in \prod_{i=1}^{s}\left(\operatorname{Mat}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}, j=1, \ldots, n\right\}
$$

Let $\left(\oplus_{i=1}^{w} d_{t, n+1}[\mathrm{~A}]\right) \oplus(1) \in \mathrm{GL}_{(n+1) r w+1}\left(\mathbf{k}^{\text {sep }}\right)$ be the block diagonal matrix such that $d_{t, n+1}[\mathrm{~A}]$ is in the first $w$ diagonal blocks and 1 in the last diagonal and all other entries are zero. Then, via conjugation by $\left(\oplus_{i=1}^{w} d_{t, n+1}[\mathrm{~A}]\right) \oplus(1)$ on $\Gamma_{N_{n}}$ we obtain $\bar{\Gamma}_{N_{n}}$ such that we have an isomorphism $\Gamma_{N_{n}} \times_{\mathbf{k}} \overline{\mathbf{k}} \cong \bar{\Gamma}_{N_{n}}$. Moreover, $\bar{\Gamma}_{N_{n}}$ is an algebraic subgroup of $\mathrm{GL}_{(n+1) r w+1} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}$ such that $\bar{\pi}_{1}: \bar{\Gamma}_{N_{n}} \rightarrow$ $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ induced by $\pi_{n}$ is surjective. Thus, we are reduced to proving that the induced tangent map $\mathrm{d} \bar{\pi}_{n}:$ Lie $\bar{\Gamma}_{N_{n}} \rightarrow$ Lie $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ is surjective. Let $w=1$ and consider the short exact sequence of linear algebraic groups

$$
\begin{equation*}
1 \rightarrow \bar{X}_{n} \rightarrow \bar{\Gamma}_{N_{n}} \xrightarrow{\bar{\pi}_{n}} \bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \rightarrow 1 \tag{5.20}
\end{equation*}
$$

Fix $1 \leq i \leq s$. We follow the methods used for the construction of $\bar{X}_{1, i}$ above to construct $\bar{X}_{n, i}$, the Zariski closure inside $\bar{\Gamma}_{N_{n}}$ of the subgroup generated by suitably chosen elements of $\bar{\Gamma}_{N_{n}}$ such
that $\bar{X}_{n, i}$ is contained in the $n r^{2} / s^{2}+n r^{2} / s$ dimensional group,

$$
\left.H_{n, i}:=\left\{\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c}
\eta_{0} & \eta_{1} & \ldots & \eta_{n} & \mathbf{0}  \tag{5.21}\\
\hline & \eta_{0} & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\
\hline & & \ddots & \eta_{1} & \vdots \\
\hline & & & \eta_{0} & \mathbf{0} \\
\hline \mathbf{s}_{0} & \mathbf{s}_{1} & \ldots & \mathbf{s}_{n} & 1
\end{array}\right) \quad \begin{array}{l} 
\\
\eta_{0} \in\left(\mathrm{GL}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}, \eta_{j} \in\left(\mathrm{Mat}_{r / s} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}, j=1, \ldots, n \\
: \mathbf{s}_{h}=\left(\mathbf{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{0}, \mathbf{s}_{h, i}, \mathbf{0}, \ldots, \mathbf{0}\right), \quad \mathbf{s}_{h, i} \in \mathbb{G}_{a}^{r / s} \\
\text { for each } h=0, \ldots, n
\end{array}\right\} .
$$

Let

Note that $\operatorname{dim} \bar{X}_{n, i} \leq \operatorname{dim} H_{n, i}=n r^{2} / s^{2}+n r / s$. If $\operatorname{dim} \bar{X}_{n, i}=n r^{2} / s^{2}+n r / s$, similar to $\bar{X}_{1,0, i}$ as in (5.12) we simply construct

$$
\bar{X}_{1,0, i}=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\vartheta_{i} & \mathbf{0} \\
\mathbf{0} & 1
\end{array}\right): \vartheta_{i} \in\left(\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})\right)_{i}\right\},
$$

and restrict $\mathrm{d} \bar{\pi}_{n}$ to $\operatorname{Lie} \bar{X}_{1,0, i}$ to obtain a surjection onto $\operatorname{Lie}\left(\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}$. As we vary all $1 \leq i \leq s$, the surjection of $\mathrm{d} \bar{\pi}_{n}$ follows.

Next, suppose $\operatorname{dim} \bar{X}_{n, i}<n r^{2} / s^{2}+n r / s$. Then, via $\bar{\pi}_{n}$ we have a short exact sequence,

$$
1 \rightarrow Q_{n, i} \rightarrow \bar{X}_{n, i} \xrightarrow{\bar{\pi}_{n, i}}\left(\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i} \rightarrow 1 .
$$

The methods used above to prove $\operatorname{dim} Q_{1, i}=0$ can be applied in a straightforward manner to prove $\operatorname{dim} Q_{n, i}=0$, which we leave to the reader. Similar to the coordinates $\mathbf{Z}_{1}$ of $\bar{X}_{1, i}$ in (5.13),
we let the coordinates of $\bar{X}_{n, i}$ be as follows:

$$
\mathbf{Z}_{n}=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathcal{Z}_{0} & \mathcal{Z}_{1} & \ldots & \mathcal{Z}_{n} & 0 \\
& \mathcal{Z}_{0} & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\
& & \ddots & \mathcal{Z}_{1} & \vdots \\
& & & \mathcal{Z}_{0} & 0 \\
\mathcal{W}_{0} & \mathcal{W}_{1} & \ldots & \mathcal{W}_{n} & 1
\end{array}\right),
$$

where

$$
\mathcal{Z}_{0}=\left(\begin{array}{ccccc}
\mathrm{Id}_{r / s} & & & & \\
& \ddots & & & \\
& & \left(Z_{0}\right) & & \\
& & & \ddots & \\
& & & & \mathrm{Id}_{r / s}
\end{array}\right), \quad \mathcal{Z}_{j}=\left(\begin{array}{lllll}
0 & & & & \\
& \ddots & & & \\
& & \left(Z_{0}\right) & & \\
& & & \ddots & \\
& & & & 0
\end{array}\right),
$$

for each $j=1, \ldots, n$ such that $\left(Z_{0}\right)$ is as in (5.13) and $\left(Z_{j}\right)$ is the $r / s \times r / s$ block $\left(\left(Z_{j}\right)_{a, b}\right)$ for $1 \leq a, b \leq r / s$. Moreover, $\mathcal{W}_{h}:=\left(0, \ldots, 0,\left(W_{h}\right), 0, \ldots 0\right)$, where we set $\left(W_{h}\right):=$ $\left(W_{h, 1}, \ldots, W_{h, r / s}\right)$ for each $h=0, \ldots, n$. Similar to (5.14), we construct one-dimensional subgroups of $\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{\ell} M_{\rho}}$ :

$$
T_{0, u, v}:=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\mathcal{B}_{u v} & \mathbf{0} & \ldots & \mathbf{0} \\
& \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & & \mathcal{B}_{u v}
\end{array}\right)\right\}, \quad U_{i, u, v}:=\left\{\left(\begin{array}{cccccc}
\operatorname{Id}_{r} & \mathbf{0} & \ldots & \mathcal{C}_{u v} & \ldots & \mathbf{0} \\
& \ddots & \ddots & & & \vdots \\
& & \ddots & \ddots & \ddots & \mathcal{C}_{u v} \\
& & & \ddots & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & & & \ddots & \mathbf{0} \\
& & & & & \operatorname{Id}_{r}
\end{array}\right)\right\}
$$

such that $\mathcal{B}_{u v}$ and $\mathcal{C}_{u v}$ are as in (5.15), and $\mathcal{C}_{u v}$ is in the $i$-th diagonal block of $U_{i, u, v}$. Similar to the $n=1$ case, note that the Lie algebras of the $n \cdot r^{2} / s^{2}$ algebraic groups $T_{0, u, v}$ and $U_{i, u, v}$ span $\operatorname{Lie}\left(\bar{\Gamma}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} / \overline{\mathbf{k}}\right)_{i}$. We construct one dimension algebraic subgroups $T_{0, u, v}^{\prime}$ and $U_{i, u, v}^{\prime}$ of $\bar{X}_{n, i}$ so
that $T_{0, u, v}^{\prime} \cong T_{0, u, v}$ and $U_{i, u, v}^{\prime} \cong U_{i, u, v}$. Then, since $\operatorname{Lie}(\cdot)$ is a left exact functor, it follows that $\operatorname{Lie} T_{0, u, v}^{\prime} \cong \operatorname{Lie} T_{0, u, v}$ and Lie $U_{i, u, v}^{\prime} \cong \operatorname{Lie} U_{i, u, v}$, and so $\mathrm{d} \bar{\pi}_{n, i}$ is surjective. Since $Q_{n, i}$ is a zero dimensional vector group, $\bar{\pi}_{n, i}$ is injective on points and so it follows by checking directly that

- for $w \neq v$ and $h=0, \ldots, n$, all $W_{h, w}$ coordinates of $\bar{\pi}_{n, i}^{-1}\left(T_{0, u, v}\right)$ are zero;
- all $\left(W_{0}\right)$ coordinates of $\bar{\pi}_{n, i}^{-1}\left(U_{i, u, v}\right)$ are zero, and for $w \neq v$ and $j=1, \ldots, n$, all $W_{j, w}$ coordinates of $\bar{\pi}_{n, i}^{-1}\left(U_{i, u, v}\right)$ are zero.

To construct $T_{0, v, v}^{\prime}$, we let $a_{v} \in \overline{\mathbf{k}}^{\times} \backslash{\overline{\mathbb{F}_{q}}}^{\times}$and pick elements $\gamma_{n, v} \in \bar{X}_{n, i}(\overline{\mathbf{k}})$ so that

$$
\bar{\pi}_{n, i}\left(\gamma_{n, v}\right)=\left(\begin{array}{lll}
\mathfrak{a}_{v} & & \\
& \ddots & \\
& & \mathfrak{a}_{v}
\end{array}\right)
$$

where $\mathfrak{a}_{v}$ is as in (5.18). For $1 \leq v \leq r / s$ and $h=0, \ldots, n$, we let $c_{h, v}$ be the $(n r+1, h r+(i-1)$. $r / s+v)$-th the entry of $\gamma_{n, v}$. Let $T_{0, v, v}^{\prime}$ be the Zariski closure of the subgroup of $\bar{X}_{n, i}$ generated by $\gamma_{n, v}$. Then, one checks directly that the defining equations of the one dimensional subgroup $T_{0, v, v}^{\prime}$ of $\bar{X}_{n, i}$ can be written as follows:

$$
\left\{\begin{array}{l}
\left(a_{v}-1\right) W_{0, v}-c_{0, v}\left(\left(Z_{0}\right)_{v, v}-1\right)=0, \forall 1 \leq v \leq r^{2} / s \\
\left(Z_{0}\right)_{w, w}=1 \forall w \neq v, 1 \leq v \leq r^{2} / s \\
\left(Z_{j}\right)_{u, v}=0 \forall j=1, \ldots, \ell, \quad 1 \leq u, v \leq r / s \\
W_{h, w}=0 \forall w \neq v ; h=0, \ldots, \ell, \quad 1 \leq v \leq r^{2} / s \\
W_{h_{1}, v} \cdot c_{h_{2}, v}-W_{h_{2}, v} \cdot c_{h_{1}, v}=0 \forall h_{1}, h_{2} \in\{0, \ldots, \ell\}, \quad 1 \leq v \leq r^{2} / s
\end{array}\right.
$$

Then, we see that $T_{0, v, v}^{\prime} \cong T_{0, v, v}$ via $\bar{\pi}_{n, i}$. Similarly, we use the methods used for $T_{0, v, v}^{\prime}$ to construct $U_{i, v, v}^{\prime}$ such that $U_{i, v, v}^{\prime} \cong U_{i, v, v}$ for all $v=1, \ldots, r / s$. To construct $T_{0, u, v}^{\prime}$ and $U_{i, u, v}$ for $u \neq v$ such that $T_{0, u, v}^{\prime} \cong T_{0, u, v}$ and $U_{i, u, v}^{\prime} \cong U_{i, u, v}$, we use conjugation where the arguments are essentially the same as the arguments used to construct $T_{u v}^{\prime}$ and $U_{u v}^{\prime}$ in the $n=1$ case, and so we omit the
details.

### 5.4 Algebraic independence of logarithms and quasi-logarithms

In this section, we prove Theorem 4 (restated as Theorem 14) and Corollary 1. Recall the short exact sequence (5.8). As was shown for the $n=0$ case (Drinfeld module case) in [12, §5.1], we will show that $X_{n}$ can be identified with a $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$-submodule of $\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}\right)^{w}$. Let $\mathbf{n} \in$ $\operatorname{Mat}_{((n+1) r w+1) \times 1}\left(N_{n}\right)$ be the $\bar{k}(t)$-basis of $N_{n}$ such that $\sigma \mathbf{n}=\Phi_{N_{n}} \mathbf{n}$. Recall that the entries of $\Psi_{N_{n}}^{-1} \mathbf{n}$ form a k-basis of $N_{n}^{B}$. If we write $\mathbf{n}=\left[\mathbf{n}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{n}_{w}, y\right]^{\top}$ where each $\mathbf{n}_{i} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{(n+1) r \times 1}\left(N_{n}\right)$, then $\left[\mathbf{n}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{n}_{w}\right]^{\top}$ is a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis of $\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}$ and the entries of $\mathbf{u}:=\left[\Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}^{-1} \mathbf{n}_{1}, \ldots, \Psi_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}^{-1} \mathbf{n}_{w}\right]^{\top}$ form a k-basis of $\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}\right)^{w}$. Given any $\mathbf{k}$-algebra R, we recall the action of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ on $\mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}\right)^{w}$ from [34, §4.5] (see also (4.13)) as follows: for any $\mu \in \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ and any $\mathbf{v}_{h} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times(n+1) r}(\mathrm{R}), 0 \leq h \leq n$, the action of $\mu$ on $\left(\mathbf{v}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{w}\right) \cdot \mathbf{u} \in R \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}\right)^{w}$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(\mathbf{v}_{1}, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{w}\right) \cdot \mathbf{u} \mapsto\left(\mathbf{v}_{1} \mu^{-1}, \ldots, \mathbf{v}_{w} \mu^{-1}\right) \cdot \mathbf{u} \tag{5.22}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, by (5.9) the action of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ on $\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}\right)^{w}$ is compatible with the action of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ on $X_{n}$. Then, when we regard $\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}\right)^{w}$ as a vector group over $\mathbf{k}$, by Lemma 4 we get the desired result.

Since $X_{n}$ is a $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$-submodule of $\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}\right)^{B}$, by the equivalence of categories $\mathcal{T}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \approx$ $\boldsymbol{\operatorname { R e p }}\left(\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}, \mathbf{k}\right)$, there exists a sub- $t$-motive $V_{n}$ of $\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}$ such that

$$
\begin{equation*}
X_{n} \cong V_{n}^{B} \tag{5.23}
\end{equation*}
$$

By (4.12), we see that for any $n \geq 1$ and $0 \leq j \leq n-1$ we obtain a short exact sequence of $t$-motives

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \rightarrow\left(\mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho}\right)^{w} \xrightarrow{\iota}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{w} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{p r}_{w}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n-j-1} M_{\rho}\right)^{w} \rightarrow 0 . \tag{5.24}
\end{equation*}
$$

Lemma 5. For $n \geq 1$, let $V_{n}$ be as in (5.23). Then, for $0 \leq j \leq n-1$ there is a surjective map of $t$-motives $\overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{w}: V_{n} \rightarrow V_{n-j-1}$ via the map $\mathbf{p r}_{w}$ in (5.24).

Proof. We prove the result for $w=1$. The following argument for $w=1$ can be applied in a straightforward manner to prove the arbitrary $w$ case, which we leave to the reader. Let $w=1$. For $n \geq 1$, recall from (2.3) that if $\boldsymbol{m} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r \times 1}\left(M_{\rho}\right)$ is a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis of $M_{\rho}$, then $\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}$ forms a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis of $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$. Let $\left[\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}^{\top}, y\right]^{\top}$ be a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis of $N_{n}$. Then, $\Psi_{N_{n}}^{-1}\left[\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}^{\top}, y\right]^{\top}$ forms a $\mathbb{F}_{q}(t)$-basis of $N_{n}^{B}$. By construction, $\mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho}$ is a sub- $t$-motive of $N_{n}$ for each $j \leq n$ and we have a short exact sequence of $t$-motives

$$
\begin{equation*}
0 \rightarrow \mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho} \xrightarrow{\iota} N_{n} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{p r}} N_{n-j-1} \rightarrow 0, \tag{5.25}
\end{equation*}
$$

where $\operatorname{pr}\left(D_{h} m\right):=D_{h-j-1} m$ for $h>j, \operatorname{pr}\left(D_{h} m\right):=0$ for $h \leq j$ and $m \in M_{\rho}$, and $\mathbf{p r}(x)=x$ for $x \in Y_{n} / \mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$. Therefore, as $t$-motives

$$
N_{n} / \mathrm{P}_{j} M_{\rho} \cong N_{n-j-1}
$$

and so we have a surjective map of affine group schemes $\Gamma_{N_{n}} \rightarrow \Gamma_{N_{n-j-1}}$. We now determine this surjective map. For any $\mathbf{k}$-algebra R , we recall the action of $\Gamma_{N_{n}}(\mathrm{R})$ on $\mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(N_{n}\right)^{B}$ from [34, §4.5] as follows: for any $\nu_{n} \in \Gamma_{N_{n}}(\mathrm{R}), b \in \mathrm{R}$ and $a_{h} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times r}(\mathrm{R})$ where $0 \leq h \leq n$, the action of $\nu_{n}$ on $\left(a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}, b\right) \cdot \Psi_{N_{n}}^{-1}\left[\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}^{\top}, y\right]^{\top} \in R \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(N_{n}\right)^{B}$ is

$$
\begin{equation*}
\left(a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}, b\right) \cdot \Psi_{N_{n}}^{-1}\left[\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}^{\top}, y\right]^{\top} \mapsto\left(a_{0}, \ldots, a_{n}, b\right) \cdot \nu_{n}^{-1} \Psi_{N_{n}}^{-1}\left[\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}^{\top}, y\right]^{\top} \tag{5.26}
\end{equation*}
$$

By the definition of $\Psi_{N_{n}}$, we see that $\Psi_{N_{n}}^{-1}\left[\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}^{\top}, y\right]^{\top}=\left[\boldsymbol{D}_{n}\left(\Psi_{\rho}^{-1} \boldsymbol{m}\right)^{\top}, D_{n}\left(-\mathbf{s}_{\alpha_{1}} \boldsymbol{m}\right)+y\right]^{\top}$. We restrict the action of $\nu_{n}$ to $\mathrm{R} \otimes_{\mathbf{k}}\left(N_{n-j-1} M_{\rho}\right)^{B}$ via the map pr in (5.25). Note that an element of $\Gamma_{N_{n}}(\mathrm{R})$ is of the form $\left(\begin{array}{cc}\mu_{n} & 0 \\ \mathbf{w}_{n} & 1\end{array}\right)$, where $\mu_{n} \in \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ and $\mathbf{w}_{n}=\left(w_{0}, \ldots, w_{n}\right)$ such that each $w_{h} \in \mathbb{G}_{a}^{r}(\mathrm{R})=\operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times r}(\mathrm{R})$. Through pr, we see that $\nu_{n}$ leaves $\left(N_{n-j-1}\right)^{B}$ invariant and so for
$\nu_{n}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}\mu_{n} & 0 \\ \mathbf{w}_{n} & 1\end{array}\right) \in \Gamma_{N_{n}}(\mathrm{R})$, we obtain

$$
\nu_{n-j-1}=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\mu_{n-j-1} & 0 \\
\mathbf{w}_{n-j-1} & 1
\end{array}\right) \in \Gamma_{N_{n-j-1}}(\mathrm{R})
$$

where $\mu_{n-j-1}$ is the matrix formed by the $r(n-j) \times r(n-j)$ upper-left square of $\mu_{n}$ and $\mathbf{w}_{n-j-1}=$ $\left(w_{0}, \ldots, w_{n-j-1}\right)$. Note that by Theorem 9 , we have $\mu_{n-j-1} \in \Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n-j-1} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$. Thus, the surjective $\operatorname{map} \Gamma_{N_{n}} \rightarrow \Gamma_{N_{n-j-1}}$ is given by

$$
\begin{equation*}
\nu_{n} \mapsto \nu_{n-j-1} \tag{5.27}
\end{equation*}
$$

(cf. [11, proof of Prop. 3.1.2]). Since $X_{n}$ and $X_{n-j-1}$ are k-smooth by Lemma 4, this map gives a surjective map of group schemes $X_{n} \rightarrow X_{n-j-1}$. By (5.23), this corresponds to a map of representations of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ over $\mathbf{k}, \overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{w}^{B}: V_{n}^{B} \rightarrow V_{n-j-1}^{B}$ via the map $\mathbf{p r}_{w}^{B}$, where $\mathbf{p r}_{w}$ is as in (5.24). By the equivalence of categories $\mathcal{T}_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}} \approx \operatorname{Rep}\left(\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}, \mathbf{k}\right)$, we get the required conclusion.

Theorem 14. Let $\rho$ be a Drinfeld A-module defined over $k^{\text {sep } . ~ S u p p o s e ~ t h a t ~} K_{\rho}$ is separable over $k$. Let $u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w} \in \mathbb{K}$ with $\operatorname{Exp}_{\rho}\left(u_{i}\right)=\alpha_{i} \in k^{\text {sep }}$ for each $i$ and suppose that $\operatorname{dim}_{K_{\rho}} \operatorname{Span}_{K_{\rho}}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r}, u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w}\right)=r / s+w$. For $n \geq 1$, let $N_{n}$ and $\Psi_{N_{n}}$ be defined as in §5.3, and for each $i=1, \ldots, w$, let $Y_{i, n}:=Y_{u_{i}, n}$ be defined as in $\S 5.2$. Then, $\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{N_{n}}=$ $(n+1) \cdot r(r / s+w)$. In particular,

$$
\operatorname{tr} \cdot \operatorname{deg}_{\bar{k}} \bar{k}\left(\bigcup_{s=0}^{n} \bigcup_{i=1}^{r-1} \bigcup_{m=1}^{w} \bigcup_{j=1}^{r}\left\{\partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(\lambda_{j}\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\tau^{i}}\left(\lambda_{j}\right)\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(u_{m}\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\tau^{i}}\left(u_{m}\right)\right\}\right)=(n+1) \cdot\left(r^{2} / s+r w\right) .\right.
$$

Proof. From the construction of $\Psi_{N_{n}}$, by Theorem 7 we have

$$
\bar{k}\left(\Psi_{N_{n}}(\theta)\right)=\bar{k}\left(\bigcup_{s=0}^{n} \bigcup_{i=1}^{r-1} \bigcup_{m=1}^{w} \bigcup_{j=1}^{r}\left\{\partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(\lambda_{j}\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\tau^{i}}\left(\lambda_{j}\right)\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(u_{m}\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\tau^{i}}\left(u_{m}\right)\right\}\right),\right.
$$

and by Theorem 6 and Theorem 12, we have

$$
\begin{equation*}
\operatorname{dim} \Gamma_{N_{n}}=\operatorname{tr} \cdot \operatorname{deg}_{\bar{k}} \bar{k}\left(\Psi_{n}(\theta)\right) \leq(n+1) \frac{r^{2}}{s}+(n+1) r w \tag{5.28}
\end{equation*}
$$

Thus, we need to prove that $\operatorname{dim} X_{n}=(n+1) r w$, where $X_{n}$ is as in (5.8). By (5.23) it suffices to show that $V_{n}^{B} \cong\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}\right)^{B}$. To prove this, we adapt the arguments of the proof of [12, Thm. 5.1.5] (see also [22, Lem. 1.2]).

Note from (5.24) that for $n \geq 1$ we have a short exact sequence of $t$-motives

$$
0 \rightarrow\left(\mathrm{P}_{0} M_{\rho}\right)^{w} \xrightarrow{\iota}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{w} \xrightarrow{\mathbf{p} \mathbf{r}_{n, w}}\left(\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}\right)^{w} \rightarrow 0 .
$$

By Lemma 5, there is a surjective map $\overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{n, w}: V_{n} \rightarrow V_{n-1}$ via $\mathbf{p r}_{n, w}$. Then $\operatorname{ker}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{n, w}\right)$ is a sub- $t$-motive of $M_{\rho}^{w}$.

Suppose for now that $V_{n-1} \cong\left(\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}$. We claim that the extension $N_{n} / V_{n}$ is trivial in $\operatorname{Ext}_{\mathcal{T}}^{1}\left(\mathbf{1}, \mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho} / V_{n}\right)$. Since $X_{n} \cong V_{n}^{B}$, we see that $\Gamma_{N_{n}}$ acts on $N_{n}^{B} / V_{n}^{B}$ through $\Gamma_{N_{n}} / X_{n} \cong$ $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ via (5.8). Since $\overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{n, w}$ is surjective onto $\left(\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}$, by (5.25) we see that $N_{n}^{B} / V_{n}^{B} \cong$ $N_{0}^{B} /\left(\operatorname{ker} \overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{n, w}\right)^{B}$. Recall that for any k-algebra R, an element of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$ is of the form (4.22) such that $\gamma$ is an element of $\Gamma_{M_{\rho}}(\mathrm{R})$. Then, (5.26) shows the action of $\Gamma_{\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}}$ on $N_{n}^{B} / V_{n}^{B}$ is the same as the action of $\Gamma_{M_{\rho}}$ on it. It follows that $N_{n}^{B} / V_{n}^{B}$ is an extension of $\mathbf{k}$ by $\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}\right)^{B} / V_{n}^{B}$ in $\operatorname{Rep}\left(\Gamma_{M_{\rho}}, \mathbf{k}\right)$. By [12, Cor. 3.5.7] and the equivalence of category $\mathcal{T}_{M_{\rho}} \approx \operatorname{Rep}\left(\Gamma_{M_{\rho}}, \mathbf{k}\right)$, we get the required conclusion of the claim.

Now, we prove the main result by induction. For the base case $n=1$, suppose on the contrary that $V_{1}^{B} \subsetneq\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}\right)^{B}$. From [12, Thm. 5.1.5], we have $M_{\rho}^{w} \cong V_{0}$ and so, since $M_{\rho}^{w} \cong\left(\mathrm{P}_{0} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}$ we have $\operatorname{ker}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{1, w}\right) \subsetneq M_{\rho}^{w}$. Since $M_{\rho}^{w}$ is completely reducible in $\mathcal{T}_{M_{\rho}}$ by [12, Cor. 3.3.3] and $\operatorname{ker}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{1, w}\right)$ is a sub-t-motive of $M_{\rho}^{w}$, there exists a non-trivial morphism $\phi_{1} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(M_{\rho}^{w}, M_{\rho}\right)$ so that $\operatorname{ker}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{1, w}\right) \subseteq \operatorname{ker} \phi_{1}$. Moreover, the morphism $\phi_{1}$ factors through the map $M_{\rho}^{w} / \operatorname{ker}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{1, w}\right) \rightarrow$ $M_{\rho}^{w} /\left(\operatorname{ker} \phi_{1}\right):$


Since $\phi_{1} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(M_{\rho}^{w}, M_{\rho}\right)$, there exist $e_{i, 1} \in \mathbf{K}_{\rho}$ not all zero such that $\phi_{1}\left(n_{1}, \ldots, n_{w}\right)=$ $\sum_{i=1}^{w} e_{i, 1}\left(n_{i}\right)$. Suppose that $E_{i, 1} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r}(\bar{k}(t))$ satisfies $e_{i, 1}(\boldsymbol{m})=E_{i, 1} \boldsymbol{m}$. Recall from $\S 2.5$ that
$\boldsymbol{D}_{1} \boldsymbol{m}$ forms a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis of $\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}$. Set

$$
\mathbf{E}_{i, 1}:=\left(\begin{array}{cc}
\mathbf{0} & E_{i, 1} \\
& \mathbf{0}
\end{array}\right) \in \operatorname{Mat}_{2 r}(\bar{k}(t)) .
$$

Then, by (5.2) there exists $\mathbf{e}_{i, 1} \in \operatorname{End}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{1} M\right)^{w}\right)$ such that

$$
\mathbf{e}_{i, 1}\left(\boldsymbol{D}_{1} \boldsymbol{m}\right)=\mathbf{E}_{i, 1} \boldsymbol{D}_{1} \boldsymbol{m}
$$

Let $\psi_{1} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}, \mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}\right)$ such that $\psi_{1}\left(D_{j} n_{1}, \ldots, D_{j} n_{w}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{w} \mathbf{e}_{i, 1}\left(D_{j} n_{i}\right)$ for each $j=0,1$. We see that $\operatorname{ker} \psi_{1} / M_{\rho}^{w} \cong \operatorname{ker} \phi_{1}$ and $\mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}^{w} / \operatorname{ker} \psi_{1} \cong M_{\rho}^{w} / \operatorname{ker} \phi_{1} \cong M_{\rho}$. Then the pushout $\psi_{1 *} N_{1}:=\mathbf{e}_{1,1 *} Y_{1,1}+\cdots+\mathbf{e}_{w, 1 *} Y_{w, 1}$ is a quotient of $N_{1} / V_{1}$. By using the claim above, it follows that $\psi_{1 *} N_{1}$ is trivial in $\operatorname{Ext}_{\mathcal{T}}^{1}\left(\mathbf{1}, \mathrm{P}_{1} M_{\rho}\right)$. However by Theorem 13, this is a contradiction.

Now suppose that we have shown the result for $n-1$, that is, $V_{n-1} \cong\left(\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}$. Suppose that $V_{n}^{B} \subsetneq\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}\right)^{B}$. Then, $\operatorname{ker}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{n, w}\right) \subsetneq M_{\rho}^{w}$. Since $M_{\rho}^{w}$ is completely reducible in $\mathcal{T}_{M_{\rho}}$ by [12, Cor. 3.3.3] and $\operatorname{ker}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{n, w}\right)$ is a sub-t-motive of $M_{\rho}^{w}$, there exists a non-trivial morphism $\phi_{n} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(M_{\rho}^{w}, M_{\rho}\right)$ so that $\operatorname{ker}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{n, w}\right) \subseteq \operatorname{ker} \phi_{n}$. Moreover, the morphism $\phi_{n}$ factors through the map $M_{\rho}^{w} / \operatorname{ker}\left(\overline{\mathbf{p r}}_{n, w}\right) \rightarrow M_{\rho}^{w} /\left(\operatorname{ker} \phi_{n}\right):$


Since $\phi_{n} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(M_{\rho}^{w}, M_{\rho}\right)$, we can write $\phi_{n}\left(n_{1}, \ldots, n_{w}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{w} e_{i, n}\left(n_{i}\right)$ for some $e_{1, n}, \ldots, e_{w, n}$ $\in \mathbf{K}_{\rho}$ not all zero. Suppose that $e_{i, n}(\boldsymbol{m})=E_{i, n} \boldsymbol{m}$ where $E_{i, n} \in \operatorname{Mat}_{r}(\bar{k}(t))$. Recall from §2.5
that $\boldsymbol{D}_{n} \boldsymbol{m}$ forms a $\bar{k}(t)$-basis of $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}$. Set

$$
\mathbf{E}_{i, n}:=\left(\begin{array}{cccc}
\mathbf{0} & \ldots & \mathbf{0} & E_{i, n} \\
& \ddots & \ddots & \mathbf{0} \\
& & \ddots & \vdots \\
& & & \mathbf{0}
\end{array}\right) \in \operatorname{Mat}_{(n+1) r}(\bar{k}(t))
$$

Then, by (5.2) there exists $\mathbf{e}_{i, n} \in \operatorname{End} \mathcal{T}\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M\right)^{w}\right)$ such that

$$
\mathbf{e}_{i, n}\left(\boldsymbol{D}_{1} \boldsymbol{m}\right)=\mathbf{E}_{i, n} \boldsymbol{D}_{1} \boldsymbol{m} .
$$

Let $\psi_{n} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{\mathcal{T}}\left(\left(\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)^{w}, \mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$ such that $\psi_{1}\left(D_{j} n_{1}, \ldots, D_{j} n_{w}\right)=\sum_{i=1}^{w} \mathbf{e}_{i, 1}\left(D_{j} n_{i}\right)$ for each $j=0, \ldots, n$. Similar to the base case, we see that $\operatorname{ker} \psi_{n} /\left(\mathrm{P}_{n-1} M_{\rho}\right)^{w} \cong \operatorname{ker} \phi_{n}$ and that $\mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}^{w} / \operatorname{ker} \psi_{n} \cong M_{\rho}^{w} / \operatorname{ker} \phi_{1} \cong M_{\rho}$. Then the pushout $\psi_{n *} N_{n}:=\mathbf{e}_{1, n *} Y_{1, n}+\cdots+\mathbf{e}_{w, n *} Y_{w, n}$ is a quotient of $N_{n} / V_{n}$. By using the claim above, it follows that $\psi_{n *} N_{n}$ is trivial in $\operatorname{Ext}_{\mathcal{T}}^{1}\left(\mathbf{1}, \mathrm{P}_{n} M_{\rho}\right)$. But by Theorem 13, this is a contradiction.

Proof of Corollary 1. We adapt the ideas of the proof of [11, Thm. 4.3.3] and [12, Cor. 5.1.6]. We define $W:=\operatorname{Span}_{K_{\rho}}\left(\lambda_{1}, \ldots, \lambda_{r}, u_{1}, \ldots, u_{w}\right)$ and let $\left\{\eta_{1}, \ldots, \eta_{\alpha}\right\}$ be a $K_{\rho}$-basis of $W$. Clearly, $r / s \leq \alpha \leq r / s+w$. Since the quasi-periodic functions $F_{\delta}$ are linear in $\delta$ and satisfy the difference equation (1.2), we have

$$
\bar{k}\left(\bigcup_{i=1}^{r-1} \bigcup_{m=1}^{w} \bigcup_{j=1}^{r}\left\{\lambda_{j}, F_{\tau^{i}}\left(\lambda_{j}\right), u_{m}, F_{\tau^{i}}\left(u_{m}\right)\right\}\right)=\bar{k}\left(\bigcup_{j=1}^{r} \bigcup_{m=1}^{\alpha}\left\{F_{\delta_{j}}\left(\eta_{m}\right)\right\}\right)
$$

Moreover, for any $i_{1}, i_{2} \in\{1, \ldots, r\}, j_{1}, j_{2} \in\{1, \ldots, \alpha\}, s \in\{0, \ldots, n\}$ and $v_{1}, v_{2} \in K_{\rho}$, by the product rule of hyperderivatives we obtain

$$
\partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(v_{1} F_{\delta_{i_{1}}}\left(\eta_{j_{1}}\right)+v_{2} F_{\delta_{i_{2}}}\left(\eta_{j_{2}}\right)\right)=\sum_{h=0}^{s}\left(\partial_{\theta}^{s-h}\left(v_{1}\right) \partial_{\theta}^{h}\left(F_{\delta_{i_{1}}}\left(\eta_{j_{1}}\right)\right)+\partial_{\theta}^{s-h}\left(v_{2}\right) \partial_{\theta}^{h}\left(F_{\delta_{i_{1}}}\left(\eta_{j_{2}}\right)\right)\right)
$$

Thus,

$$
\begin{aligned}
\bar{k}\left(\bigcup _ { s = 0 } ^ { n } \bigcup _ { i = 1 } ^ { r - 1 } \bigcup _ { m = 1 } ^ { w } \bigcup _ { j = 1 } ^ { r } \left\{\partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(\lambda_{j}\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\tau^{i}}\left(\lambda_{j}\right)\right), \partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(u_{m}\right),\right.\right. & \left.\left.\partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\tau^{i}}\left(u_{m}\right)\right)\right\}\right) \\
& =\bar{k}\left(\bigcup_{s=0}^{n} \bigcup_{j=1}^{r} \bigcup_{m=1}^{\alpha}\left\{\partial_{\theta}^{s}\left(F_{\delta_{j}}\left(\eta_{m}\right)\right)\right\}\right) .
\end{aligned}
$$

Then, the result follows from Theorem 14.

## 6. CONCLUSION

In this dissertation, we determined all algebraic independence results among hyperderivatives of periods, quasi-periods, logarithms and quasi-logarithms of Drinfeld A-modules. A natural next step would be to investigate the transcendence of the entries of the periods and logarithms of a general uniformizable Anderson $t$-module. Let $\phi$ be a uniformizable Anderson $t$-module of dimension $d$ and rank $r$ defined over $\bar{k}$. Similar to the case of the Drinfeld module $\rho$ above, we define its dual $t$-motive $\mathcal{M}_{\phi}$ by setting $\mathcal{M}_{\phi}:=\operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times d}(\bar{k}[\sigma])$. If $\mathcal{M}_{\phi}$ is A-finite, then $r=$ $\operatorname{rank}_{\bar{k}[t]} \mathcal{M}_{\phi}$ is the rank of $\mathcal{M}_{\phi}$.

The $t$-motive (in the sense of [1]) $\mathcal{N}_{\phi}$ of $\phi$ is defined by setting $\mathcal{N}_{\phi}=\operatorname{Mat}_{1 \times d}(\bar{k}[\tau])$. We let $t \cdot m:=m \phi_{t}, \forall m \in \mathcal{M}_{\phi}$ and thus we give $\mathcal{N}_{\phi}$ a unique structure of a left $\bar{k}[t, \tau]$-module. Moreover, for any $m \in \mathcal{N}_{\phi}$, we have that $(t-\theta)^{d} \cdot m \in \tau \mathcal{M}_{\phi}$. If in addition $\mathcal{N}_{\phi}$ is free and finitely generated as a left $\bar{k}[t]$-module, $\phi$ is called an abelian $t$-module.

Similar to the case of the Drinfeld modules, suppose that $\left\{\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{1}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\lambda}_{r}\right\}$ forms an A-basis of the period lattice $\Lambda_{\phi}$ and $\left\{\boldsymbol{\delta}_{1}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{\delta}_{r}\right\}$ is a $\bar{k}$-basis of $\mathrm{H}_{\mathrm{DR}}^{1}(\phi)$, the de Rham module of a uniformizable, abelian, and A-finite $t$-module $\phi$. In [32], Papanikolas and the author investigated how to use rigid analytic trivialization to study periods, quasi-periods, logarithms and quasi-logarithms of the abelian Anderson $t$-module $\phi$. Using Yu's sub- $t$-module theorem [44], the following result was proved.

Proposition 5 (Namoijam-Papanikolas, [32]). Let $\phi: \mathbf{A} \rightarrow \operatorname{Mat}_{d}(\bar{k}[\tau])$ be a uniformizable abelian $t$-module defined over $\bar{k}$, and assume further that $\phi$ is simple ( $\phi$ has no proper non-trivial sub-tmodules). Then, $\operatorname{dim}_{\bar{k}} \operatorname{Span}_{\bar{k}}\left(\mathrm{~F}_{\boldsymbol{\delta}_{i}}\left(\boldsymbol{\lambda}_{j}\right): 1 \leq i, j \leq r\right)=r^{2} / s$, where $s=[\operatorname{End}(\phi): \mathbf{A}]$.

Even studying the Galois groups associated to simple, uniformizable, abelian, and A-finite Anderson $t$-modules and strictly pure Anderson $t$-modules (see [24, § 5.2], [32]) to determine the transcendence of their periods and quasi-periods would be interesting. The difficulty that arises in the application of methods similar to the ones used in this dissertation or [12] to find the Galois
group of the $t$-motives associated to Anderson $t$-modules of dimension greater that 1 is that the Zariski closure of the image of a map similar to the one in Theorem 8 need not be open. Therefore, we only get containment of this Zariski closure in our Galois group. We plan to investigate this in future research.

Lemma 6 (Namoijam-Papanikolas, [32]). Suppose that $\phi: \mathbf{A} \rightarrow \operatorname{Mat}_{d}\left(k_{\infty}^{\mathrm{sep}}[\tau]\right)$ is an abelian $t$-module defined over $k_{\infty}^{\text {sep }}$ and that $\boldsymbol{\delta}$ is a $\phi$-biderivation also defined over $k_{\infty}^{\text {sep }}$. For any $\boldsymbol{x} \in \mathbb{C}_{\infty}^{d}$ such that $\operatorname{Exp}_{\phi}(\boldsymbol{x}) \in\left(k_{\infty}^{\text {sep }}\right)^{d}$, we have $\boldsymbol{x} \in\left(k_{\infty}^{\text {sep }}\right)^{d}$ and $\mathrm{F}_{\boldsymbol{\delta}}(\boldsymbol{x}) \in k_{\infty}^{\text {sep }}$.

By this lemma, we can consider the hyperderivatives of the periods and logarithms of a uniformizable, abelian and A-finite Anderson $t$-module $\phi$ defined over $k^{\text {sep }}$. Moreover, we determined that the evaluation of the rigid analytic trivialization matrix of the prolongations of $\phi$ yields all its periods, quasi-periods, logarithms, quasi-logarithms, and their hyperderivatives. Therefore, we intend to study prolongations of Anderson $t$-modules of dimension greater than 1 by adapting the methods used in this dissertation.

Thakur [38] defined the multiple zeta values

$$
\zeta_{A}(\mathbf{s})=\sum_{\operatorname{deg}\left(a_{1}\right)>\cdots>\operatorname{deg}\left(a_{r}\right)} \frac{1}{a_{1}^{s_{1}} \ldots a_{r}^{s_{r}}},
$$

where each $a_{i} \in A_{+}$, and $\mathbf{s}=\left(s_{1}, \ldots, s_{r}\right) \in \mathbb{N}$. Let $L_{0}:=1$ and for $i \geq 1$ define $L_{i}:=$ $\prod_{j=1}^{i}\left(\theta-\theta^{q^{j}}\right)$. Chang [8] introduced the Carlitz multiple polylogarithm (CMPL)

$$
\mathbf{L i}_{\mathbf{s}}\left(z_{1}, \ldots, z_{r}\right):=\sum_{i_{1}>\cdots>i_{r} \geq 0} \frac{z_{1}^{q_{1}^{i_{1}}} \ldots z_{r}^{q^{i_{r}}}}{L_{i_{1}}^{s_{1}} \ldots L_{i_{r}}^{s_{r}}},
$$

where $\mathbf{s}=\left(s_{1}, \ldots, s_{r}\right) \in \mathbb{N}$. Chang showed that $\zeta_{A}(\mathbf{s})$ can be expressed as a $k$-linear combination of CMPL's and further showed that each monomial of CMPL's at algebraic points is transcendental over $k$. The Carlitz multiple star polylogarithm (CMSPL) is defined as

$$
\operatorname{Li}_{\mathbf{s}}^{*}\left(z_{1}, \ldots, z_{r}\right):=\sum_{i_{1} \geq \cdots \geq i_{r} \geq 0} \frac{z_{1}^{q_{1}^{i_{1}}} \ldots z_{r}^{q_{r}}}{L_{i_{1}}^{s_{1}} \ldots L_{i_{r}}^{s_{r}}}
$$

Chang and Mishiba [10] introduced CMSPL's and used them to construct an Anderson $t$-module such that multiple zeta values appear in some form as a certain coordinate of a logarithm at an algebraic point. Chang, Green and Mishiba [9] gave explicit formula for the coordinates of this logarithm and hyperderivatives of the CMSPL's appear in some form.

Since we were successful in the investigation of hyperderivatives of periods and logarithms of Drinfeld A-modules, we are hopeful that methods used in this dissertation can be adapted for the study of transcendence of these CMPL's and CMSPL's, and their hyperderivatives. The $\bar{k}$-linear independence of the Carlitz zeta values $\zeta_{C}(s)=\sum_{a \in A_{+}} \frac{1}{a^{n}}$ was established by Yu [43], [44], and their algebraic relations over $\bar{k}$ were completely proved by Chang and Yu [13]. Transcendence and algebraic relations among CMPL's have been studied by Chang [8] and Mishiba ([31], [30]).

## REFERENCES

[1] G. W. Anderson, t-motives, Duke Math. J. 53 (1986), no. 2, 457-502.
[2] G. W. Anderson, W. D. Brownawell, and M. A. Papanikolas, Determination of the algebraic relations among special $\Gamma$-values in positive characteristic, Ann. of Math. 160 (2004), no. 2, 237-313.
[3] W. D. Brownawell, Linear independence and divided derivatives of a Drinfeld module. I., Number Theory in Progress, Zakopane-Kościelisko Vol. 1 (1997), 47-61.
[4] , Minimal extensions of algebraic groups and linear independence, J. Number Theory 90 (2001), no. 2, 239-254.
[5] W. D. Brownawell and L. Denis, Linear independence and divided derivatives of a Drinfeld module. II., Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. 128 (2000), no. 6, 1581-1593.
[6] W. D. Brownawell and M. A. Papanikolas, Linear independence of Gamma-values in positive characteristic, J. Reine Angew. Math. 549 (2002), 91-148.
[7] _ , A rapid introduction to Drinfeld modules, $t$-modules, and $t$-motives, $t$-Motives: Hodge Structures, transcendence, and other motivic aspects, BIRS, Banff, Canada (to appear) (2009).
[8] C.-Y. Chang, Linear independence of monomials of multizeta values in positive characteristic, Compositio Math. 150 (2014), 1789-1808.
[9] C.-Y. Chang, N. Green, and Y. Mishiba, Taylor coefficients of t-motivic multiple zeta values and explicit formulae, arXiv:1902.06879 (2019).
[10] C.-Y. Chang and Y. Mishiba, Logarithmic interpretation of multiple zeta values in positive characteristic, arXiv:1710.10849 (2017).
[11] C.-Y. Chang and M. A. Papanikolas, Algebraic relations among periods and logarithms of rank 2 Drinfeld modules, Amer. J. Math. 133 (2011), no. 2, 359-391.
[12] ,__, Algebraic independence of periods and logarithms of Drinfeld modules. with an appendix by B. Conrad, J. Amer. Math. Soc. 25 (2012), no. 1, 123-150.
[13] C.-Y. Chang and J. Yu, Determination of algebraic relations among special zeta values in positive characteristic, Adv. Math. 216 (2007), 321-345.
[14] K. Conrad, The digit principle, J. Number Theory 84 (2000), no. 2, 230-257.
[15] L. Denis, Transcendence et dérivées de l'exponentielle de Carlitz, Séminaire de Théorie des Nombres, (Paris, 1991-92), Birkhäuse, Boston, MA (1993), 1-21.
[16] _, Dérivées d'un module de Drinfeld et transcendance, Duke Math. J. 80 (1995), no. 1, 1-13.
[17] $\qquad$ , Indépendance algébrique des dérivées d'une période du module de Carlitz, J. Austral. Math. Soc. Ser. A 69 (2000), no. 1, 8-18.
[18] V. G. Drinfeld, Elliptic modules, Math. Sb. (N.S.) 94 (1974), 594-627.
[19] B. Farb and R. K. Dennis, Noncommutative algebra, Springer-Verlag, New York, 1993.
[20] E.-U. Gekeler, On the de Rham isomorphism for Drinfeld modules, J. Reine Angew. Math. 401 (1989), 188-208.
[21] N. Green, Tensor powers of rank 1 Drinfeld modules and periods, J. Number Theory (to appear), arXiv:1706.1706.03854 (2017).
[22] C. Hardouin, Unipotent radical of Tannakian Galois groups in positive characteristic, Arithmetic and Galois theories of differential equations, Seminars and Congresses 23 (2011), 223239.
[23] $\qquad$ , Galoisian approach to differential transcendence, in "Galois Theories of Linear Difference Equations: An Introduction" with J. Sauloy and M. F. Singer, Mathematical Surveys and Monograph of the AMS, 2016.
[24] U. Hartl and A.-K. Juschka, Pink's theory of Hodge structures and the Hodge conjecture over function fields, $t$-motives: Hodge structures, transcendence and other motivic aspects, European Mathematical Society (EMS), Zurich, (to appear) (2016).
[25] K. Iima and Y. Yoshino, Gröbner bases for the polynomial ring with infinite variables and their applications, Communications in Algebra 37:10 (2009), 3424-3437.
[26] S. Jeong, Calculus in positive characteristic p, J. Number Theory 131 (2011), no. 6, 10891104.
[27] A. Maurischat, Periods oft-modules as special values, J. Number Theory, David Goss Memorial Issue. (2018).
[28] $\qquad$ , Prolongations of t-motives and algebraic independence of periods, Doc. Math. 23 (2018), 815-838.
[29] , Anderson t-modules with thin t-adic Galois representations, arXiv:1907.05144 (2019).
[30] Y. Mishiba, On algebraic independence of certain multizeta values in characteristic $p$, J. Number Theory 173 (2017), 512-528.
[31] , Algebraic independence of the Carlitz period and the positive characteristic multizeta values at $n$ and ( $n, n$ ), Proc. Amer. Math. Soc. 143 (2019), no. 9, 3753-3763.
[32] C. Namoijam and M. A. Papanikolas, Hyperderivatives of periods and quasi-periods for Anderson t-modules, Preprint (2020).
[33] K. Okugawa, Differential algebra of nonzero characteristic, Kinokuniya Co. Ltd., Tokyo (1987).
[34] M. A. Papanikolas, Tannakian duality for Anderson-Drinfeld motives and algebraic independence of Carlitz logarithms, Invent. Math. 171 (2008), no. 1, 123-174.
[35] F. Pellarin, Aspects de l'indépendance algébrique en caractéristique non nulle, Astérisque (2008), no. 973, viii, 205-242.
[36] R. Pink, The Mumford-Tate conjecture for Drinfeld modules, Publ. Res. Inst. Math. Sci. 33 (1997), no. 3, 393-425.
[37] T. A. Springer, Linear Algebraic Groups, 2nd ed., Birkhäuser, Boston, 1998.
[38] D. S. Thakur, Function Field Arithmetic, World Scientific Publishing, River Edge, NJ, 2004.
[39] A. Thiery, Indépendance algébrique des périodes et quasi-périodes dun module de Drinfeld, The arithmetic of function fields (Columbus, OH, 1991), de Gruyter, Berlin (1992), 265-284.
[40] W. C. Waterhouse, Introduction to Affine Group Schemes, Springer, New York, 1979.
[41] J. Yu, Transcendence and Drinfeld modules, Invent. Math. 83 (1986), 507-517.
[42] $\qquad$ , On periods and quasi-periods of Drinfeld modules, Compositio Math. 74 (1990), no. 3, 235-245.
[43] $\qquad$ , Transcendence and special zeta values in characteristic p, Ann. of Math. 134 (1991), no. 1, 1-23.
[44] $\qquad$ , Analytic homomorphisms into Drinfeld modules, Ann. of Math. 145 (1997), no. 2, 215-233.

## APPENDIX A

## DIFFERENTIAL ALGEBRAIC GEOMETRY

We present a few topics from differential algebraic geometry in positive characteristic [33] (cf. [23] for characteristic zero). For the most part, we follow the terminology of [23]. Even though the proofs of most of the results presented here are covered in [33], we present them here nevertheless for completeness.

## A. 1 Differential algebra in positive characteristic

Let $R$ be a commutative ring with unity of characteristic $p>0$. A differential ring or $\partial$-ring is a pair $(R, \partial)$, where $\partial$ represents a sequence of additive maps $\partial^{j}: R \rightarrow R$ that satisfy

1. $\partial^{0}(a)=a$,
2. $\partial^{j}(a+b)=\partial^{j}(a)+\partial^{j}(b)$,
3. $\partial^{j}(a b)=\sum_{i=0}^{j} \partial^{i}(a) \partial_{\theta}^{j-i}(b)$,
4. $\partial^{k} \partial^{j}(a)=\binom{k+j}{j} \partial^{k+j}(a)$,
for all $a, b \in R$ and $j, k \geq 0$. If $R$ is a field, then we say that $(R, \partial)$ is a differential field or a $\partial$-field. When the context is clear, we shall write $R$ instead of $(R, \partial)$. Moreover, a $\partial$-morphism between two $\partial$-rings $R$ and $S$ is a morphism of rings that commute with $\partial$. For a $\partial$-ring $R$, if we let $\mathfrak{I} \subseteq R$ be an ideal, then $\mathfrak{I}$ is called a $\partial$-ideal if $\partial^{j}(\mathfrak{I}) \subseteq \mathfrak{I}$ for all $j \geq 1$. If, in addition, $\mathfrak{I}$ is a radical (respectively prime) ideal of the $\partial$-ring $R$ regarded as a ring, then we say that $\mathfrak{I}$ is a radical (respectively prime) $\partial$-ideal of the $\partial$-ring $R$. For a set $\Sigma \subseteq R$, the intersection of all $\partial$-ideals containing $\Sigma$ is a $\partial$-ideal of $R$, which we denote by $\mathfrak{D}(\Sigma)$ and it is the smallest $\partial$-ideal of $R$ containing $\Sigma$. We see that $\mathfrak{D}(\Sigma)$ is the ideal, generated $\left\{\partial^{j}(a) \mid j \geq 0, a \in \Sigma\right\}$, of the $\partial$-ring $R$ regarded as a ring. We denote by $\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{D}(\Sigma))$ or $\mathfrak{R}(\Sigma)$ the radical of $\mathfrak{D}(\Sigma)$ in the $\partial$-ring $R$.

Proposition 6 (Okugawa [33, p.45, Thm. 5]). Let $R$ be a $\partial$-ring of characteristic $p>0$ and let $\mathfrak{I} \subseteq R$ be a $\partial$-ideal of $R$. Then, the radical $\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{I})$ is a $\partial$-ideal of $R$.

Proof. It suffices to prove that $\partial^{j}(\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{I})) \subseteq \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{I})$ for all $j \geq 1$. Let $a \in \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{I})$. Then $a^{n} \in \mathfrak{I}$ for some $n \geq 1$. For a sufficiently large $e \geq 1$, we see that

$$
a^{m} \cdot a^{n}=a^{p^{e}} \in \mathfrak{I}
$$

for some $m \in \mathbb{N}$. Since $\partial$ satisfies the same properties as hyperderivatives (see $\S 2.4$ ), by Proposition 1 (b), for all $j \in \mathbb{N}$ we see that

$$
\partial^{j p^{e}}\left(a^{p^{e}}\right)=\left(\partial^{j}(a)\right)^{p^{e}} .
$$

Since $\mathfrak{I}$ is a $\partial$-ideal of $R$, we have $\partial^{j p^{e}}\left(a^{p^{e}}\right) \in \mathfrak{I}$ for all $j \geq 1$. Thus, $\left(\partial^{j}(a)\right)^{p^{e}} \in \mathfrak{I}$ and so $\partial^{j}(a) \in \mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{I})$.

Remark 4. The proof of Proposition 6 does not work in characteristic 0. See [23, Prop. 2.19] for characteristic 0 .

Theorem 15 (cf. [33, p. 63 Thm. 1] and [23, Lem. 2.22]). Let R be a $\partial$-ring of characteristic $p>0$ and let $\mathfrak{I}$ is a proper $\partial$-ideal of $R$. If $S$ is a multiplicative subset of $R$ such that $S \cap \mathfrak{I}=\emptyset$, then there exists a prime $\partial$-ideal $\mathbf{p}$ of $R$ such that $\mathfrak{I} \subseteq \mathbf{p}$ but $S \cap \mathbf{p}=\emptyset$.

Proof. Consider the set of all $\partial$-ideals of $R$ that do not intersect $S$ but contain $\mathfrak{I}$, ordered by inclusion. Clearly, this set is not empty since it contains $\mathfrak{I}$. By Zorn's Lemma, this set has a maximal element $\mathbf{p}$. We claim that $\mathbf{p}$ is a prime ideal of $R$. Suppose there exist elements $a, b \in R$ such that $a \notin \mathbf{p}, b \notin \mathbf{p}$ and $a b \in \mathbf{p}$. By the maximal property of $\mathbf{p}$, we see that $\mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{p}, a) \cap S \neq \emptyset$ and $\mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{p}, b) \cap S \neq \emptyset$. Let $s_{1} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{p}, a) \cap S$ and $s_{2} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{p}, b) \cap S$. Then, $s_{1} \cdot s_{2} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathbf{p}, a b) \subset \mathbf{p}$, which is a contradiction since $S$ is a multiplicative set.

## A. 2 Kolchin topology in positive characteristic

The $\partial$-polynomial ring denoted by $R\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$ in the $\partial$-variables $\left(y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right)$ is the polynomial ring over $R$ in the variables $\partial^{j}\left(y_{i}\right), j \geq 1, i=1, \ldots, m$ made into a $\partial$-ring by setting
(a) $\partial^{j}(a):=\partial^{j}(a)$ for $a \in R$,
(b) $\partial^{k}\left(\partial^{j}\left(y_{i}\right)\right):=\binom{k+j}{j} \partial^{k+j}\left(y_{i}\right), k \geq 1$.

Here $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}$ are called $\partial$-indeterminates.
We can now define the Kolchin topology in positive characteristic. Let $K$ be a $\partial$-field. A $\partial$-extension field of $K$ is a $\partial$-field $L$ which is an extension field of the $\partial$-field $K$. Let $\bar{K}$ be an algebraic closure of the field $K$ and $K^{\text {sep }}$ be the separable closure of $K$ in $\bar{K}$.

Proposition 7. There is a unique extension of $\partial^{j}: K \rightarrow K$ to $\partial^{j}: K^{\text {sep }} \rightarrow K^{\text {sep }}$, which satisfy all the rules of $\partial$.

Proof. The proof follows the same argument as that for hyperderivatives. See [14, Thm. 5].

Let $a \in \bar{K} \backslash K^{\text {sep }}$. We say that $\partial$ can be extended to $a$ if $\partial$ can be extended to some extension field of $K^{\text {sep }}$ that contains $a$. The largest extension field $\bar{K}^{\partial}$ of $K^{\text {sep }}$ in $\bar{K}$ that has an extension of $\partial$ is called the $\partial$-closure of $K$ in $\bar{K}$.

Let $S \subseteq K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$ be a set of $\partial$-polynomials. The zero set of $S$ is defined as

$$
\mathfrak{Z}(S):=\left\{\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}\right) \in\left(\bar{K}^{\partial}\right)^{m} \mid f\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}\right)=0, \forall f \in S\right\} .
$$

Proposition 8 (cf. [23, Prop. 3.2]). For $i \geq 0$, let $S, T, S_{i} \subset K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$. We have the following properties.

1. $\mathfrak{Z}(0)=\left(\bar{K}^{\partial}\right)^{m}$ and $\mathfrak{Z}(R)=\emptyset$.
2. $S \subset T$ implies that $\mathfrak{Z}(T) \subset \mathfrak{Z}(S)$.
3. $\mathfrak{Z}(S)=\mathfrak{Z}(\mathfrak{D}(S))=\mathfrak{Z}(\mathfrak{R}(S))$.
4. $\mathfrak{Z}\left(\cup S_{i}\right)=\mathfrak{Z}\left(\sum \mathfrak{D}\left(S_{i}\right)\right)=\cap \mathfrak{Z}\left(S_{i}\right)$.
5. $\mathfrak{Z}(\mathfrak{D}(S) \cap \mathfrak{D}(T))=\mathfrak{Z}(\mathfrak{D}(S) \mathfrak{D}(T))=\mathfrak{Z}(S) \cup \mathfrak{Z}(T)$.

Proof. The proofs of the assertions follow the same line of argument as that for the Zariski topology.

A set $X \subseteq\left(\bar{K}^{\partial}\right)^{m}$ is said to be $K$ - $\partial$-closed if there exists a subset $S \subseteq K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$ such that $X=\mathfrak{Z}(S)$. If we set

$$
\mathfrak{I}(X):=\left\{P \in K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\} \mid P\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}\right)=0 \quad \forall\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}\right) \in X\right\},
$$

then $\Im(X)$ is a radical $\partial$-ideal in $R$, and we call it the defining $K$ - $\partial$-ideal of $X$.
If $X$ is not $K$ - $\partial$-closed, then its $K$ - $\partial$-closure $\bar{X}^{\partial}$ is the smallest $K$ - $\partial$-closed subset of $\left(\bar{K}^{\partial}\right)^{m}$ containing $X$, that is, $\mathcal{Z}(\Im(X))$.

Proposition 9 (cf. [23, Prop. 3.8]). Let $X_{1}, X_{2} \subseteq\left(\bar{K}^{d}\right)^{m}$. Then,

1. If $X_{1} \subseteq X_{2}$, then $\mathfrak{I}\left(X_{2}\right) \subseteq \Im\left(X_{1}\right)$,
2. $\mathfrak{I}\left(X_{1} \cup X_{2}\right)=\Im\left(X_{1}\right) \cap \mathfrak{I}\left(X_{2}\right)$.

Proof. The proofs of the assertions follow the same line of argument as that for the Zariski topology.

Theorem 16 (Okugawa [33, p. 71 Thm. 2]). Let $\mathbf{p}$ be a prime d-ideal of the polynomial ring $K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$. There exists a zero $\xi \in\left(\bar{K}^{\partial}\right)^{m}$ of $\mathbf{p}$ such that

$$
\mathbf{p}=\left\{f \in K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\} \mid f(\xi)=0\right\} .
$$

Proof. Let $K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\} / \mathbf{p}$ be the residue ring of $K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\} \bmod \mathbf{p}$, and $\varphi$ the canonical $\partial$-morphism of $K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$ onto $K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\} / \mathbf{p}$. Since $\varphi$ induces a $\partial$-isomorphism of $K$ onto $\varphi(K)$, we identify each $a \in K$ with $\varphi(a)$. Then the $\partial$-field of quotients $Q\left(K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\} / \mathbf{p}\right)$
of $K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\} / \mathbf{p}$ is a $\partial$-extension of $K$. If we set $\xi=\left(\xi_{1}, \ldots, \xi_{m}\right)$ where each $\xi_{i}:=\varphi\left(y_{i}\right)$, then we get the desired result.

Proposition 10 (Okugawa [33, p. 72 Thm.4]). Let $S \subseteq K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$ be a set of $\partial$-polynomials. If $\mathfrak{Z}(S)=\emptyset$, then $\mathfrak{R}(S)=K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$.

Proof. Assume that $\mathfrak{R}(S) \neq K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$. By Theorem 15 there is a prime differential ideal $\mathbf{p}$ such that $\mathfrak{R}(S) \subseteq \mathbf{p}$. Then, the zero $\xi$ of $\mathbf{p}$ from Theorem 16 is such that $\xi \in \mathfrak{Z}(S)$, which is a contradiction to the hypothesis.

The differential algebraic geometry analogue of Hilbert's Nullstellensatz is as follows.

Theorem 17 (Okugawa [33, p.72, Cor. to Thms. 3 and 4]). For the $\partial$-field $K$, let $K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$ be a $\partial$-polynomial ring and let $S \subseteq K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$. Then

$$
\mathfrak{R}(S)=\mathfrak{I}(\mathfrak{Z}(S)) .
$$

Proof. It is clear that $\mathfrak{R}(S) \subseteq \Im(\mathfrak{Z}(S))$. Therefore, it suffices to show that if $g \in \mathfrak{I}(\mathfrak{Z}(S))$, then $g \in \mathfrak{R}(S)$. Let $y_{m+1}$ be a $\partial$-indeterminate over $K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$. Consider the set

$$
S^{\prime}:=\left\{f, 1-y_{m+1} g \mid f \in S\right\} \subseteq K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}, y_{m+1}\right\}
$$

where $g \in \Im(\mathfrak{Z}(S))$. Since $g$ vanishes at every zero of $S$, the set $S^{\prime}$ has no zeros. Thus by Proposition 10, the ideal $\mathfrak{D}\left(S^{\prime}\right)$ of the $\partial$-ring $K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}, y_{m+1}\right\}$ contains 1 and so

$$
\begin{equation*}
1=\sum_{\substack{L_{i} \in S \\ j \geq 1}} Q_{i, \ell_{j}} \cdot \partial^{\ell_{j}}\left(L_{i}\right)+\sum_{h \geq 1} Q_{\ell_{h}} \partial^{\ell_{h}}\left(1-y_{m+1} g\right), \tag{A.1}
\end{equation*}
$$

where each $Q_{i, \ell_{j}}, Q_{\ell_{h}} \in K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}, y_{m+1}\right\}$ and $\ell_{j}, \ell_{h} \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$. Note that the right hand side of (A.1) has finitely many terms. Since $\partial$ satisfies the same properties as hyperderivatives (see $\S 2.4$ ),
by Proposition 1(c) we see that for $u \geq 1$

$$
\begin{equation*}
\partial^{u}\left(\frac{1}{g}\right)=\frac{B}{g^{v}} \tag{A.2}
\end{equation*}
$$

for some $B \in K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$ and $v \in \mathbb{N}$. Substituting $y_{m+1}$ for $1 / g$, we have $1-y_{m+1} g=0$ and so by (A.2), we obtain

$$
1=\sum_{\substack{L_{i} \in S \\ j \geq 1}} \frac{B_{i, \ell_{j}}}{g^{v_{i, \ell_{j}}}} \cdot \partial^{\ell_{j}}\left(L_{i}\right)
$$

where each $B_{i, \ell_{j}} \in K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$ and $v_{i, \ell_{j}} \in \mathbb{N}$. Multiplying both sides by a sufficiently large power $w$ of $g$ to clear denominators, we see that $g^{w} \in \mathfrak{D}(S)$ and so $g \in \mathfrak{R}(S)$.

Given a $K$ - $\partial$-closed set $X \subseteq\left(\left(\bar{K}^{\partial}\right)^{m}, \partial\right)$, we consider the Zariski closure $\bar{X}^{Z} \subseteq \bar{K}^{m}$ of $X$, the closure of $X$ as a subset of $\left(\bar{K}^{\partial}\right)^{m}$ equipped with the Zariski topology. Let $S \subseteq K\left[y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right]$ be a set of polynomials. The zero set of $S$ is defined as

$$
\mathcal{Z}(S):=\left\{\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}\right) \in \bar{K}^{m} \mid f\left(a_{1}, \ldots, a_{m}\right)=0, \forall f \in S\right\} .
$$

Lemma 7 (cf. [23, Lem. 3.42]). Let $X \subseteq\left(\bar{K}^{\partial}\right)^{m}$ be a $K-\partial$-closed set and let its defining $K-\partial-$ ideal be $\mathfrak{I}(X) \subseteq K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$. Also, let $K\left[y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right]$ be the polynomial ring in the variables $y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}$ over the field $K$. Then its Zariski closure is the set

$$
\bar{X}^{Z}=\mathcal{Z}\left(\Im(X) \cap K\left[y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right]\right)
$$

where $\Im(X) \cap K\left[y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right] \subseteq K\left[y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right]$.

Proof. We follow the outline of the proof of [23, Lem. 3.42]. Since $\mathcal{Z}\left(\mathfrak{I}(X) \cap K\left[y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right]\right)$ is Zariski closed, it is straightforward to see that

$$
X \subseteq \bar{X}^{Z} \subseteq \mathcal{Z}\left(\Im(X) \cap K\left[y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right]\right)
$$

Conversely, if $S \subseteq K\left[y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right] \subseteq K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$ is such that $X \subseteq \mathcal{Z}(S)$, then by Theorem 17 we have $\mathfrak{R}(S) \subseteq \Im(X)$. This implies that $S \subseteq \mathfrak{R}(S) \cap K\left[y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right] \subseteq \Im(X) \cap$ $K\left[y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right]$. Thus, $\mathcal{Z}\left(\mathfrak{I}(X) \cap K\left[y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right]\right) \subseteq \mathcal{Z}(S)$. Since $S$ was chosen arbitrarily, we see that $\mathcal{Z}\left(\Im(X) \cap K\left[y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right]\right) \subseteq \bar{X}^{Z}$.

If $f \in K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$ is a linear combination over the $\partial$-field $K$ of 1 and elements of the set $\left\{\partial^{j}\left(y_{i}\right) \mid j \geq 0, i=1, \ldots, m\right\}$, then we say that $f$ is a linear $\partial$-polynomial in $K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$. Moreover if the coefficient of 1 is 0 , then we say that $f$ is a linear homogeneous $\partial$-polynomial.

Proposition 11 (Okugawa [33, p. 74 Thm. 5]). Let $S \subseteq K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$ be a set of linear $\partial$ polynomials, then

$$
\mathfrak{R}(S)=\mathfrak{D}(S)
$$

Proof. It suffices to show that $\mathfrak{D}(S)$ is a prime ideal of the $\partial$-ring $K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$ regarded as a ring. By definition $\mathfrak{D}(S)$ is generated, as an ideal of the ring $K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$, by $\left\{\partial^{j}\left(L_{i}\right) \mid i, j \geq\right.$ $\left.0, L_{i} \in S\right\}$. Suppose that $f, g \notin \mathfrak{D}(S)$ such that $f g \in \mathfrak{D}(S)$. Then,

$$
f g=\sum_{\substack{L_{i} \in S \\ j \geq 1}} h_{i, \ell_{j}} \partial^{\ell_{j}}\left(L_{i}\right),
$$

where $\ell_{j} \in \mathbb{N}$, and $h_{i, \ell_{j}} \in K\left\{y_{1}, \ldots, y_{m}\right\}$, and all but finitely many $h_{i, \ell_{j}}$ are zero. We see that $f g$ is a polynomial in a finite subset of the variables $\left\{\partial^{j}\left(y_{i}\right) \mid j \geq 0, i=1, \ldots, m\right\}$ over the $\partial$-field $K$ regarded as a field. Let us denote this subset of variables by $\left\{x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right\}$ for some $n \geq 1$. Then, $L=\left(\left\{\partial^{\ell_{j}}\left(L_{i}\right)\right\}\right)$ is an ideal in $K\left[x_{1}, \ldots, x_{n}\right]$ such that $f, g \notin L$ and $f g \in L$ and so, $L$ is not a prime ideal. However, for a polynomial ring in finitely many indeterminates, ideals generated by linear polynomials are prime ideals and thus, we obtain a contradiction.

The reader is directed to [33] for a detailed account of different algebra in positive characteristic and [23] for a detailed account of differential algebraic geometry in characteristic zero.

